IPsec VPNs

FortiOS™ Handbook v3
for FortiOS 4.0 MR3
Trademarks

Copyright© 2012 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, and FortiGuard®, are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., and other Fortinet names herein may also be trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and performance may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet’s General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to the performance metrics herein. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet’s internal lab tests. Fortinet disclaims in full any guarantees. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.

Visit these links for more information and documentation for your Fortinet products:
Fortinet Knowledge Base - http://kb.fortinet.com
Technical Documentation - http://docs.fortinet.com
Training Services - http://campus.training.fortinet.com
Technical Support - http://support.fortinet.com
You can report errors or omissions in this or any Fortinet technical document to techdoc@fortinet.com.
Contents

Introduction ............................................. 11
   How this guide is organized .......................... 11

IPsec VPN concepts ...................................... 13
   VPN tunnels ........................................... 13
   VPN gateways ......................................... 14
   Clients, servers, and peers ......................... 16
   Encryption ............................................. 17
   Authentication ........................................ 17
      Preshared keys .................................... 17
      Additional authentication ......................... 18
   Phase 1 and Phase 2 settings ....................... 18
      Phase 1 ............................................. 18
      Phase 2 ............................................. 18
   Security Association .................................. 19

IPsec VPN Overview ..................................... 21
   Types of VPNs ......................................... 21
      Route-based VPNs .................................. 21
      Policy-based VPNs ................................ 22
      Comparing policy-based or route-based VPNs .... 22
   Planning your VPN .................................... 22
      Network topologies ................................ 23
   General preparation steps ............................ 24
   How to use this guide to configure an IPsec VPN ... 24

IPsec VPN in the web-based manager .................. 25
   Auto Key (IKE) ........................................ 25
   Phase 1 configuration ................................ 26
      Phase 1 advanced configuration settings ........ 28
   Phase 2 configuration ................................ 31
      Phase 2 advanced configuration settings ........ 31
   FortiClient VPN ....................................... 34
   Manual Key ............................................. 35
      Manual key configuration settings ............... 35
   Concentrator .......................................... 36
   IPsec Monitor .......................................... 37
**Auto Key phase 1 parameters**

- Overview .................................................................................................................. 39
- Defining the tunnel ends .......................................................................................... 40
- Choosing main mode or aggressive mode .............................................................. 40
- Choosing the IKE version ....................................................................................... 41
- Authenticating the FortiGate unit ........................................................................... 41
  - Authenticating the FortiGate unit with digital certificates .............................. 41
  - Authenticating the FortiGate unit with a pre-shared key ............................... 42
- Authenticating remote peers and clients .............................................................. 44
  - Enabling VPN access for specific certificate holders ........................................ 44
  - Before you begin .................................................................................................. 44
  - Configuring certificate authentication for a VPN ............................................. 45
  - Enabling VPN access by peer identifier ............................................................ 46
  - Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys .................. 47
- Defining IKE negotiation parameters ................................................................. 49
  - Generating keys to authenticate an exchange ................................................... 49
- Defining IKE negotiation parameters ................................................................. 50
  - NAT traversal .................................................................................................... 52
  - NAT keepalive frequency .................................................................................. 53
  - Dead peer detection ......................................................................................... 53
- Using XAuth authentication ................................................................................... 54
  - Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server ................................................... 54
  - Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth client ..................................................... 55

**Phase 2 parameters**

- Basic phase 2 settings ............................................................................................ 57
- Advanced phase 2 settings .................................................................................... 57
  - P2 Proposals ........................................................................................................ 58
  - Replay detection ................................................................................................ 58
  - Perfect forward secrecy (PFS)( ........................................................................... 58
  - Keylife ................................................................................................................ 58
  - Auto-negotiate ..................................................................................................... 58
  - Autokey Keep Alive ........................................................................................... 59
  - DHCP-IPsec ....................................................................................................... 59
  - Quick mode selectors ......................................................................................... 59
- Configure the phase 2 parameters ...................................................................... 60
  - Specifying the phase 2 parameters ................................................................... 60

**Defining VPN security policies**

- Defining policy addresses ...................................................................................... 63
- Defining VPN security policies ............................................................................. 64
  - Defining an IPsec security policy for a policy-based VPN ............................... 65
  - Allow outbound and allow inbound .................................................................. 65
### Gateway-to-gateway configurations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration overview</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General configuration steps</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the two VPN peers</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Phase 1 and Phase 2 for both peers</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating security policies</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating firewall addresses</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating route-based VPN security policies</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring a default route for VPN interface</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating policy-based VPN security policy</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to work with overlapping subnets</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution for route-based VPN</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution for policy-based VPN</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hub-and-spoke configurations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration overview</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hub-and-spoke infrastructure requirements</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoke gateway addressing</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected networks addressing</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using aggregated subnets</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using an address group</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure the hub</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define the hub-spoke VPNs</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define the hub-spoke security policies</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring communication between spokes (policy-based VPN)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring communication between spokes (route-based VPN)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using a zone as a concentrator</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using a zone with a policy as a concentrator</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using security policies as a concentrator</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure the spokes</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring security policies for hub-to-spoke communication</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Policy-based VPN security policy</strong></td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring security policies for spoke-to-spoke communication</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Policy-based VPN security policy</strong></td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dynamic spokes configuration example ....................................................... 95
Configure the hub (FortiGate_1) ................................................................. 95
  Define the IPsec configuration ............................................................... 95
  Define the security policies ................................................................. 96
  Configure communication between spokes ........................................... 97
Configure the spokes .................................................................................. 98
  Define the IPsec configuration ............................................................... 98
  Define the security policies ................................................................. 99

Dynamic DNS configuration ................................................................. 101
Dynamic DNS over VPN concepts ............................................................ 101
  Dynamic DNS (DDNS) ......................................................................... 101
  Routing ................................................................................................ 101
  Dynamic DNS over VPN ...................................................................... 102
  Remote Gateway ................................................................................. 102
  Local ID (peer ID) .............................................................................. 102
  Route-based or policy-based VPN ....................................................... 103
Dynamic DNS topology ............................................................................. 103
Assumptions ............................................................................................. 104
General configuration steps ....................................................................... 104
Configure the dynamically-addressed VPN peer ...................................... 105
  Configuring branch_2 VPN tunnel settings ......................................... 105
  Configuring branch_2 security policies .............................................. 106
    Define address ranges for branch_2 security policies ..................... 107
    Creating branch_2 route-based security policies .............................. 107
    Creating branch_2 policy-based security policies ............................ 109
Configure the fixed-address VPN peer ...................................................... 110
  Configuring branch_1 VPN tunnel settings ......................................... 110
  Configuring branch_1 security policies .............................................. 111
    Defining address ranges for branch_1 security policies ................ 111
    Creating branch_1 route-based security policies .............................. 112
    Creating branch_1 policy-based security policies ............................ 113
Testing ....................................................................................................... 114

FortiClient dialup-client configurations ................................................. 115
Configuration overview ........................................................................... 115
  Peer identification .............................................................................. 116
  Automatic configuration of FortiClient dialup clients ....................... 116
One button FortiGate-to-FortiClient Phase1 VPN .................................... 117
  How the FortiGate unit determines which settings to apply .................. 117
Using virtual IP addresses ........................................................................ 118
  Assigning VIPs by RADIUS user group ........................................... 119
FortiClient dialup-client infrastructure requirements ............................. 119
FortiClient-to-FortiGate VPN configuration steps ..................................... 120
Configure the FortiGate unit ................................................................. 120
Configuring FortiGate unit VPN settings ........................................... 120
Route-based VPN security policies ..................................................... 122
Policy-based VPN security policy ....................................................... 122
Configuring the FortiGate unit as a VPN policy server ....................... 123
Configuring DHCP service on the FortiGate unit .............................. 123

Configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application ..................... 125
Configuring FortiClient to work with VPN policy distribution ............... 125
Configuring FortiClient manually ....................................................... 125
Adding XAuth authentication .............................................................. 126
FortiClient dialup-client configuration example ................................. 127
Configuring FortiGate_1 ................................................................. 127
Configuring the FortiClient Endpoint Security application ................. 131

FortiGate dialup-client configurations ................................. 133
Configuration overview ................................................................. 133
FortiGate dialup-client infrastructure requirements ........................ 135
FortiGate dialup-client configuration steps ...................................... 136
Configure the server to accept FortiGate dialup-client connections ....... 136
Policy-based VPN security policy ....................................................... 138
Configure the FortiGate dialup client ................................................ 138
Route-based VPN security policy ....................................................... 139
Policy-based VPN security policy ....................................................... 139

Supporting IKE Mode config clients ................................................ 141
Automatic configuration overview .................................................... 141
IKE Mode Config overview ............................................................. 141
Configuring IKE Mode Config ......................................................... 142
Configuring an IKE Mode Config client .......................................... 142
Configuring an IKE Mode Config server ......................................... 142
IP address assignment ................................................................. 143
Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config server .......................... 144
Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config client .......................... 145

Internet-browsing configuration ...................................................... 147
Configuration overview ................................................................. 147
Creating an Internet browsing security policy .................................... 148
Routing all remote traffic through the VPN tunnel .............................. 149
Configuring a FortiGate remote peer to support Internet browsing ....... 149
Configuring a FortiClient application to support Internet browsing ..... 150
Redundant VPN configurations

Redundant route-based VPN configuration example
- Configuring FortiGate_1
- Configuring FortiGate_2

Partially-redundant route-based VPN example
- Configuring FortiGate_1
- Configuring FortiGate_2

Creating a backup IPsec interface

Transparent mode VPNs

Transparent VPN infrastructure requirements
- Before you begin

Configure the VPN peers

Manual-key configurations

Specify the manual keys for creating a tunnel

IPv6 IPsec VPNs

Overview of IPv6 IPsec support
- Certificates

Configuring IPv6 IPsec VPNs
- Phase 1 configuration
- Phase 2 configuration
- Security policies
- Routing

Site-to-site IPv6 over IPv6 VPN example
- Configure FortiGate A interfaces
- Configure FortiGate A IPsec settings
- Configure FortiGate A security policies
- Configure FortiGate A routing
- Configure FortiGate B

Site-to-site IPv4 over IPv6 VPN example
- Configure FortiGate A interfaces
- Configure FortiGate A IPsec settings
- Configure FortiGate A security policies
- Configure FortiGate A routing
- Configure FortiGate B
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site-to-site IPv6 over IPv4 VPN example</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure FortiGate A interfaces</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure FortiGate A IPsec settings</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure FortiGate A security policies</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure FortiGate A routing</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure FortiGate B</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2TP and IPsec (Microsoft VPN)</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP)</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumptions</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the FortiGate unit</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring LT2P users and firewall user group</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating user accounts</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a user group</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring L2TP</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring IPsec</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring security policies</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Windows PC</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick checks</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac OS X and L2TP</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting up logging</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding the log messages</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the FortiGate unit debug commands</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical L2TP over IPsec session startup log entries - raw format</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRE over IPsec (Cisco VPN) configurations</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the FortiGate unit</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling overlapping subnets</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the IPsec VPN</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding IPsec tunnel end addresses</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the GRE tunnel</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding GRE tunnel end addresses</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring security policies</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring routing</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Cisco router</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick checks</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting up logging</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding the log messages</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using diagnostic commands</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Protecting OSPF with IPsec

Overview .................................................. 221
OSPF over IPsec configuration. ................................. 222
  Configuring the IPsec VPN. .................................. 222
  Configuring static routing .................................... 223
  Configuring OSPF ........................................... 223
    FortiGate_1 OSPF configuration. ............................ 223
    FortiGate_2 OSPF configuration ............................. 225
Creating a redundant configuration ............................ 227
  Adding the second IPsec tunnel ............................. 227
  Adding the OSPF interface ................................. 227

Hardware offloading and acceleration .......................... 229
Overview .................................................. 229
  IPsec session offloading requirements ...................... 229
  Packet offloading requirements ............................... 230
  IPsec encryption offloading ............................... 230
  HMAC check offloading ..................................... 230
IPsec offloading configuration examples ....................... 231
  Accelerated route-based VPN configuration ................. 231
  Accelerated policy-based VPN configuration ................. 233

Monitoring and troubleshooting ................................. 235
Monitoring VPN connections ................................... 235
  Monitoring connections to remote peers .................... 235
  Monitoring dialup IPsec connections ......................... 235
Testing VPN connections ..................................... 236
  Testing VPN connection .................................... 236
    LAN interface connection .................................. 237
    Dialup connection ........................................ 237
  Troubleshooting VPN connections ......................... 237
Logging VPN events .......................................... 239
VPN troubleshooting tips .................................... 241
  The VPN proposal is not connecting ....................... 241
  General troubleshooting tips .............................. 241
  A word about NAT devices ............................. 242

Index .................................................. 243
Introduction

Welcome and thank you for selecting Fortinet products for your network protection. This guide provides an overview of the IPsec VPN functionality within FortiOS on your FortiGate unit. The first few chapters introduce you to the standards of VPN. The remainder of the guide provides various configuration steps and options in different situations using various FortiOS features.

How this guide is organized

This guide contains the following sections:

- **IPsec VPN concepts** explains the basic concepts that you need to understand about virtual private networks (VPNs).
- **IPsec VPN Overview** provides a brief overview of IPsec technology and includes general information about how to configure IPsec VPNs using this guide.
- **IPsec VPN in the web-based manager** describes the IPsec VPN menu of the web-based manager interface.
- **Gateway-to-gateway configurations** explains how to set up a basic gateway-to-gateway (site-to-site) IPsec VPN. In a gateway-to-gateway configuration, two FortiGate units create a VPN tunnel between two separate private networks.
- **Hub-and-spoke configurations** describes how to set up hub-and-spoke IPsec VPNs. In a hub-and-spoke configuration, connections to a number of remote peers and/or clients radiate from a single, central FortiGate hub.
- **Dynamic DNS configuration** describes how to configure a site-to-site VPN, in which one FortiGate unit has a static IP address and the other FortiGate unit has a dynamic IP address and a domain name.
- **FortiClient dialup-client configurations** guides you through configuring a FortiClient dialup-client IPsec VPN. In a FortiClient dialup-client configuration, the FortiGate unit acts as a dialup server and VPN client functionality is provided by the FortiClient Endpoint Security application installed on a remote host.
- **FortiGate dialup-client configurations** explains how to set up a FortiGate dialup-client IPsec VPN. In a FortiGate dialup-client configuration, a FortiGate unit with a static IP address acts as a dialup server and a FortiGate unit with a dynamic IP address initiates a VPN tunnel with the FortiGate dialup server.
- **Supporting IKE Mode config clients** explains how to set up a FortiGate unit as either an IKE Mode Config server or client. IKE Mode Config is an alternative to DHCP over IPsec.
- **Internet-browsing configuration** explains how to support secure web browsing performed by dialup VPN clients, and hosts behind a remote VPN peer. Remote users can access the private network behind the local FortiGate unit and browse the Internet securely. All traffic generated remotely is subject to the security policy that controls traffic on the private network behind the local FortiGate unit.
How this guide is organized

Introduction

Redundant VPN configurations discusses the options for supporting redundant and partially redundant tunnels in an IPsec VPN configuration. A FortiGate unit can be configured to support redundant tunnels to the same remote peer if the FortiGate unit has more than one interface to the Internet.

Transparent mode VPNs describes two FortiGate units that create a VPN tunnel between two separate private networks transparently. In transparent mode, all FortiGate unit interfaces except the management interface are invisible at the network layer.

Manual-key configurations explains how to manually define cryptographic keys to establish an IPsec VPN tunnel. If one VPN peer uses specific authentication and encryption keys to establish a tunnel, both VPN peers must use the same encryption and authentication algorithms and keys.

IPv6 IPsec VPNs describes FortiGate unit VPN capabilities for networks based on IPv6 addressing. This includes IPv4-over-IPv6 and IPv6-over-IPv4 tunnelling configurations. IPv6 IPsec VPNs are available in FortiOS 3.0 MR5 and later.

L2TP and IPsec (Microsoft VPN) explains how to support Microsoft Windows native VPN clients.

GRE over IPsec (Cisco VPN) configurations explains how to interoperate with Cisco VPNs that use Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) protocol with IPsec.

Protecting OSPF with IPsec provides an example of protecting OSPF links with IPsec.

Auto Key phase 1 parameters provides detailed step-by-step procedures for configuring a FortiGate unit to accept a connection from a remote peer or dialup client. The basic phase 1 parameters identify the remote peer or clients and support authentication through preshared keys or digital certificates. You can increase VPN connection security further using methods such as extended authentication (XAuth).

Phase 2 parameters provides detailed step-by-step procedures for configuring an IPsec VPN tunnel. During phase 2, the specific IPsec security associations needed to implement security services are selected and a tunnel is established.

Defining VPN security policies explains how to specify the source and destination IP addresses of traffic transmitted through an IPsec VPN tunnel, and how to define a security encryption policy. Security policies control all IP traffic passing between a source address and a destination address.

Hardware offloading and acceleration explains how to make use of FortiASIC network processor IPsec accelerated processing capabilities.

Monitoring and troubleshooting provides VPN monitoring and testing procedures

Where possible, this document explains how to configure VPNs using the web-based manager. A few options can be configured only through the CLI. You can also configure VPNs entirely through the CLI. For detailed information about CLI commands, see the FortiGate CLI Reference.
IPsec VPN concepts

Virtual Private Network (VPN) technology enables remote users to connect to private computer networks to gain access to their resources in a secure way. For example, an employee traveling or working from home can use a VPN to securely access the office network through the Internet.

Instead of remotely logging on to a private network using an unencrypted and unsecure Internet connection, the use of a VPN ensures that unauthorized parties cannot access the office network and cannot intercept any of the information that is exchanged between the employee and the office. It is also common to use a VPN to connect the private networks of two or more offices.

Fortinet offers VPN capabilities in the FortiGate Unified Threat Management (UTM) appliance and in the FortiClient Endpoint Security suite of applications. A FortiGate unit can be installed on a private network, and FortiClient software can be installed on the user’s computer. It is also possible to use a FortiGate unit to connect to the private network instead of using FortiClient software.

This chapter discusses VPN terms and concepts including:

- VPN tunnels
- VPN gateways
- Clients, servers, and peers
- Encryption
- Authentication
- Phase 1 and Phase 2 settings
- Security Association

VPN tunnels

The data path between a user's computer and a private network through a VPN is referred to as a tunnel. Like a physical tunnel, the data path is accessible only at both ends. In the telecommuting scenario, the tunnel runs between the FortiClient application on the user’s PC, or a FortiGate unit or other network device and the FortiGate unit on the office private network.

Encapsulation makes this possible. IPsec packets pass from one end of the tunnel to the other and contain data packets that are exchanged between the local user and the remote private network. Encryption of the data packets ensures that any third-party who intercepts the IPsec packets can not access the data.
Figure 1: Encoded data going through a VPN tunnel

You can create a VPN tunnel between:
- a PC equipped with the FortiClient application and a FortiGate unit
- two FortiGate units
- third-party VPN software and a FortiGate unit

Third-party VPN software is not covered in this document. Refer to the Fortinet Knowledge Base for more information on this topic.

VPN gateways

A gateway is a router that connects the local network to other networks. The default gateway setting in your computer’s TCP/IP properties specifies the gateway for your local network.

A VPN gateway functions as one end of a VPN tunnel. It receives incoming IPsec packets, decrypts the encapsulated data packets and passes the data packets to the local network. Also, it encrypts data packets destined for the other end of the VPN tunnel, encapsulates them, and sends the IPsec packets to the other VPN gateway. The VPN gateway is a FortiGate unit because the private network behind it is protected, ensuring the security of the unencrypted VPN data. The gateway can also be FortiClient software running on a PC since the unencrypted data is secure on the PC.

The IP address of a VPN gateway is usually the IP address of the network interface that connects to the Internet. Optionally, you can define a secondary IP address for the interface and use that address as the local VPN gateway address. The benefit of doing this is that your existing setup is not affected by the VPN settings.

The following diagram shows a VPN connection between two private networks with FortiGate units acting as the VPN gateways. This configuration is commonly referred to as Gateway-to-Gateway IPsec VPN.
Although the IPsec traffic may actually pass through many Internet routers, you can visualize the VPN tunnel as a simple secure connection between the two FortiGate units. Users on the two private networks do not need to be aware of the VPN tunnel. The applications on their computers generate packets with the appropriate source and destination addresses, as they normally do. The FortiGate units manage all the details of encrypting, encapsulating and sending the packets to the remote VPN gateway.

The data is encapsulated in IPsec packets only in the VPN tunnel between the two VPN gateways. Between the user's computer and the gateway, the data is on the secure private network and it is in regular IP packets.

For example User1 on the Site A network, at IP address 10.10.1.7, sends packets with destination IP address 192.168.10.8, the address of User2 on the Site B network. The Site A FortiGate unit is configured to send packets with destinations on the 192.168.10.0 network through the VPN, encrypted and encapsulated. Similarly, the Site B FortiGate unit is configured to send packets with destinations on the 10.10.1.0 network through the VPN tunnel to the Site A VPN gateway.

In the site-to-site, or gateway-to-gateway VPN shown in Figure 2, the FortiGate units have static (fixed) IP addresses and either unit can initiate communication.

You can also create a VPN tunnel between an individual PC running FortiClient and a FortiGate unit, as shown below. This is commonly referred to as Client-to-Gateway IPsec VPN.
Figure 3: VPN tunnel between a FortiClient PC and a FortiGate unit

On the PC, the FortiClient application acts as the local VPN gateway. Packets destined for the office network are encrypted, encapsulated into IPsec packets, and sent through the VPN tunnel to the FortiGate unit. Packets for other destinations are routed to the Internet as usual. IPsec packets arriving through the tunnel are decrypted to recover the original IP packets.

Clients, servers, and peers

A FortiGate unit in a VPN can have one of the following roles:

- **server** — responds to a request to establish a VPN tunnel.
- **client** — contacts a remote VPN gateway and requests a VPN tunnel.
- **peer** — brings up a VPN tunnel or responds to a request to do so.

The site-to-site VPN shown in Figure 2 is a peer-to-peer relationship. Either FortiGate unit VPN gateway can establish the tunnel and initiate communications. The FortiClient-to-FortiGate VPN shown in Figure 3 is a client-server relationship. The FortiGate unit establishes a tunnel when the FortiClient PC requests one.

A FortiGate unit acts as a server only when the remote VPN gateway has a dynamic IP address or is a client-only device or application, such as FortiClient.

As a VPN server, a FortiGate unit can also offer automatic configuration for FortiClient PCs. The user needs to know only the IP address of the FortiGate VPN server and a valid user name/password. FortiClient downloads the VPN configuration settings from the FortiGate VPN server. For information about configuring a FortiGate unit as a VPN server, see the FortiClient Administration Guide.
Encryption

Encryption mathematically transforms data to appear as meaningless random numbers. The original data is called plaintext and the encrypted data is called ciphertext. The opposite process, called decryption, performs the inverse operation to recover the original plaintext from the ciphertext.

The process by which the plaintext is transformed to ciphertext and back again is called an algorithm. All algorithms use a small piece of information, a key, in the arithmetic process of converted plaintext to ciphertext, or vice-versa. IPsec uses symmetrical algorithms, in which the same key is used to both encrypt and decrypt the data.

The security of an encryption algorithm is determined by the length of the key that it uses. FortiGate IPsec VPNs offer the following encryption algorithms, in descending order of security:

- **AES256**: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- **AES192**: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- **AES128**: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- **3DES**: Triple-DES, in which plain text is DES-encrypted three times by three keys.
- **DES**: Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.

The default encryption algorithms provided on FortiGate units make recovery of encrypted data almost impossible without the proper encryption keys.

There is a human factor in the security of encryption. The key must be kept secret, known only to the sender and receiver of the messages. Also, the key must not be something that unauthorized parties might easily guess, such as the sender's name, birthday or simple sequence such as 123456.

Authentication

In addition to protecting data through encryption, a VPN must ensure that only authorized users can access the private network. You must use either a preshared key on both VPN gateways or RSA X.509 security certificates. The examples in this guide use only preshared key authentication. Refer to the Fortinet Knowledge Base for articles on RSA X.509 security certificates.

**Preshared keys**

A preshared key contains at least six random alphanumeric characters. Users of the VPN must obtain the preshared key from the person who manages the VPN server and add the preshared key to their VPN client configuration.

Although it looks like a password, the preshared key, also known as a shared secret, is never sent by either gateway. The preshared key is used in the calculations at each end that generate the encryption keys. As soon as the VPN peers attempt to exchange encrypted data, preshared keys that do not match will cause the process to fail.
Additional authentication

To increase security, you can require additional means of authentication from users:
- an identifier, called a peer ID or a local ID
- extended authentication (XAUTH) which imposes an additional user name/password requirement

A Local ID is an alphanumeric value assigned in the Phase 1 configuration. The Local ID of a peer is called a Peer ID.

Phase 1 and Phase 2 settings

A VPN tunnel is established in two phases: Phase 1 and Phase 2. Several parameters determine how this is done. Except for IP addresses, the settings simply need to match at both VPN gateways. There are defaults that are appropriate for most cases.

FortiClient distinguishes between Phase 1 and Phase 2 only in the VPN Advanced settings and uses different terms. Phase 1 is called the IKE Policy. Phase 2 is called the IPsec Policy.

Phase 1

In Phase 1, the two VPN gateways exchange information about the encryption algorithms that they support and then establish a temporary secure connection to exchange authentication information.

When you configure your FortiGate unit or FortiClient application, you must specify the following settings for Phase 1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote Gateway</th>
<th>The remote VPN gateway’s address. FortiGate units also have the option of operating only as a server by selecting the “Dialup User” option.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preshared key</td>
<td>This must be the same at both ends. It is used to encrypt phase 1 authentication information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local interface</td>
<td>The network interface that connects to the other VPN gateway. This applies on a FortiGate unit only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All other Phase 1 settings have default values. These settings mainly configure the types of encryption to be used. The default settings on FortiGate units and in the FortiClient application are compatible. The examples in this guide use these defaults.

For more detailed information about Phase 1 settings, see the "Auto Key phase 1 parameters" on page 39.

Phase 2

Similar to the Phase 1 process, the two VPN gateways exchange information about the encryption algorithms that they support for Phase 2. You may choose different encryption for Phase 1 and Phase 2. If both gateways have at least one encryption algorithm in common, a VPN tunnel can be established. Keep in mind that more algorithms each phase does not share with the other gateway, the longer negotiations will take. In extreme cases this may cause timeouts during negotiations.
To configure default Phase 2 settings on a FortiGate unit, you need only select the name of the corresponding Phase 1 configuration. In FortiClient, no action is required to enable default Phase 2 settings.

For more detailed information about Phase 2 settings, see “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57.

**Security Association**

The establishment of a Security Association (SA) is the successful outcome of Phase 1 negotiations. Each peer maintains a database of information about VPN connections. The information in each SA can include cryptographic algorithms and keys, keylife, and the current packet sequence number. This information is kept synchronized as the VPN operates. Each SA has a Security Parameter Index (SPI) that is provided to the remote peer at the time the SA is established. Subsequent IPsec packets from the peer always reference the relevant SPI. It is possible for peers to have multiple VPNs active simultaneously, and correspondingly multiple SPIs.
IPsec VPN Overview

This section provides a brief overview of IPsec technology and includes general information about how to configure IPsec VPNs using this guide.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Types of VPNs
- Planning your VPN
- General preparation steps
- How to use this guide to configure an IPsec VPN

VPN configurations interact with the firewall component of the FortiGate unit. There must be a security policy in place to permit traffic to pass between the private network and the VPN tunnel.

Security policies for VPNs specify:

- the FortiGate interface that provides the physical connection to the remote VPN gateway, usually an interface connected to the Internet
- the FortiGate interface that connects to the private network
- IP addresses associated with data that has to be encrypted and decrypted
- optionally, a schedule that restricts when the VPN can operate
- optionally, the services (types of data) that can be sent

When the first packet of data that meets all of the conditions of the security policy arrives at the FortiGate unit, a VPN tunnel may be initiated and the encryption or decryption of data is performed automatically afterward. For more information, see “Defining VPN security policies” on page 63.

Types of VPNs

FortiGate unit VPNs can be policy-based or route-based. There is little difference between the two types. In both cases, you specify phase 1 and phase 2 settings. However there is a difference in implementation. A route-based VPN creates a virtual IPsec network interface that applies encryption or decryption as needed to any traffic that it carries. That is why route-based VPNs are also known as interface-based VPNs. A policy-based VPN is implemented through a special security policy that applies the encryption you specified in the phase 1 and phase 2 settings.

Route-based VPNs

For a route-based VPN, you create two security policies between the virtual IPsec interface and the interface that connects to the private network. In one policy the virtual interface is the source. In the other policy the virtual interface is the destination. The Action for both policies is Accept. This creates bidirectional policies that ensure traffic will flow in both directions over the VPN.
Policy-based VPNs

For a policy-based VPN, one security policy enables communication in both directions. You must select IPSEC as the Action and then select the VPN tunnel you defined in the phase 1 settings. You can then enable inbound and outbound traffic as needed within that policy, or create multiple policies of this type to handle different types of traffic differently. For example HTTPS traffic may not require the same level of scanning as FTP traffic.

Comparing policy-based or route-based VPNs

For both VPN types you create phase 1 and phase 2 configurations. Both types are handled in the stateful inspection security layer, assuming there is no IPS or AV. For more information on the three security layers, see the FortiOS Troubleshooting guide.

The main difference is in the security policy.

You create a policy-based VPN by defining an IPSEC security policy between two network interfaces and associating it with the VPN tunnel (phase 1) configuration. You create a route-based VPN by enabling IPsec interface mode in the VPN phase 1 configuration. This creates a virtual IPsec interface. You then define a regular ACCEPT security policy to permit traffic to flow between the virtual IPsec interface and another network interface. And lastly, configure a static route to allow traffic over the VPN.

Where possible, you should create route-based VPNs. Generally, route-based VPNs are more flexible and easier to configure than policy-based VPNs — by default they are treated as interfaces. However, these two VPN types have different requirements that limit where they can be used.

Table 1: Comparison of policy-based and route-based VPNs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Policy-based</th>
<th>Route-based</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Both NAT and transparent modes available</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>NAT mode only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2TP-over-IPsec supported</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRE-over-IPsec supported</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>security policy requirements</td>
<td>Requires a security policy with IPSEC action that specifies the VPN tunnel</td>
<td>Requires only a simple security policy with ACCEPT action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of policies per VPN</td>
<td>One policy controls connections in both directions</td>
<td>A separate policy is required for connections in each direction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Planning your VPN

It is a good idea to plan the VPN configuration ahead of time. This will save time later and be help you configure your VPN correctly.

All VPN configurations comprise a number of required and optional parameters. Before you begin, you need to determine:

• where does the IP traffic originate and where does it need to be delivered
• which hosts, servers, or networks to include in the VPN
which VPN devices to include in the configuration
- through which interfaces the VPN devices communicate
- through which interfaces do private networks access the VPN gateways

Once you have this information, you can select a VPN topology that meets the requirements of your situation.

**Network topologies**

The topology of your network will determine how remote peers and clients connect to the VPN and how VPN traffic is routed. You can read about various network topologies and find the high-level procedures needed to configure IPsec VPNs in one of these sections.

**Table 2: VPN network topologies and brief descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topology</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gateway-to-gateway configurations</strong></td>
<td>Standard one-to-one VPN between two FortiGate units. See “Gateway-to-gateway configurations” on page 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hub-and-spoke configurations</strong></td>
<td>One central FortiGate unit has multiple VPNs to other remote FortiGate units. See “Hub-and-spoke configurations” on page 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic DNS configuration</strong></td>
<td>One end of the VPN tunnel has a changing IP address and the other end must go to a dynamic DNS server for the current IP address before establishing a tunnel. See “Dynamic DNS configuration” on page 101.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FortiClient dialup-client configurations</strong></td>
<td>Typically remote FortiClient dialup-clients use dynamic IP addresses through NAT devices. The FortiGate unit acts as a dialup server allowing dialup VPN connections from multiple sources. See “FortiClient dialup-client configurations” on page 115.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FortiGate dialup-client configurations</strong></td>
<td>Similar to FortiClient dialup-client configurations but with more gateway-to-gateway settings such as unique user authentication for multiple users on a single VPN tunnel. See “FortiGate dialup-client configurations” on page 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internet-browsing configuration</strong></td>
<td>Secure web browsing performed by dialup VPN clients, and/or hosts behind a remote VPN peer. See “Internet-browsing configuration” on page 147.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Redundant VPN configurations</strong></td>
<td>Options for supporting redundant and partially redundant IPsec VPNs, using route-based approaches. See “Redundant VPN configurations” on page 151.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transparent mode VPNs</strong></td>
<td>In transparent mode, the FortiGate acts as a bridge with all incoming traffic being broadcast back out on all other interfaces. Routing and NAT must be performed on external routers. See “Transparent mode VPNs” on page 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manual-key configurations</strong></td>
<td>Manually define cryptographic keys to establish an IPsec VPN, either policy-based or route-based. See “Manual-key configurations” on page 183.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L2TP and IPsec (Microsoft VPN)</strong></td>
<td>Configure VPN for Microsoft Windows dialup clients using the built in L2TP software. Users do not have to install any See “L2TP and IPsec (Microsoft VPN)” on page 199.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These sections contain high-level configuration guidelines with cross-references to detailed configuration procedures. If you need more detail to complete a step, select the cross-reference in the step to drill-down to more detail. Return to the original procedure to complete the procedure. For a general overview of how to configure a VPN, see “General preparation steps” below.

General preparation steps

A VPN configuration defines relationships between the VPN devices and the private hosts, servers, or networks making up the VPN. Configuring a VPN involves gathering and recording the following information. You will need this information to configure the VPN.

- **The private IP addresses of participating hosts, servers, and/or networks.** These IP addresses represent the source addresses of traffic that is permitted to pass through the VPN. A IP source address can be an individual IP address, an address range, or a subnet address.

- **The public IP addresses of the VPN end-point interfaces.** The VPN devices establish tunnels with each other through these interfaces.

- **The private IP addresses associated with the VPN-device interfaces to the private networks.** Computers on the private networks behind the VPN gateways will connect to their VPN gateways through these interfaces.

How to use this guide to configure an IPsec VPN

This guide uses a task-based approach to provide all of the procedures needed to create different types of VPN configurations. Follow the step-by-step configuration procedures in this guide to set up the VPN.

The following configuration procedures are common to all IPsec VPNs:

1. Define the phase 1 parameters that the FortiGate unit needs to authenticate remote peers or clients and establish a secure a connection. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39.

2. Define the phase 2 parameters that the FortiGate unit needs to create a VPN tunnel with a remote peer or dialup client. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57.

3. Specify the source and destination addresses of IP packets that are to be transported through the VPN tunnel. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.

4. Create an IPsec security policy to define the scope of permitted services between the IP source and destination addresses. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64.

These steps assume you configure the FortiGate unit to generate unique IPsec encryption and authentication keys automatically. In situations where a remote VPN peer or client requires a specific IPsec encryption and authentication key, you must configure the FortiGate unit to use manual keys instead of performing Steps 1 and 2. For more information, see “Manual-key configurations” on page 183.
IPsec VPN in the web-based manager

The IPsec VPN menu in FortiOS provides settings to configure an IPsec VPN. IPsec VPNs that are configured by using the general procedure:

1. Define phase 1 parameters to authenticate remote peers and clients for a secure connection. See “Phase 1 configuration” on page 26.

2. Define phase 2 parameters to create a VPN tunnel with a remote peer or dialup client. See “Phase 2 configuration” on page 31.

With these steps, your FortiGate unit will automatically generate unique IPsec encryption and authentication keys. If a remote VPN peer or client requires a specific IPsec encryption or authentication key, you must configure your FortiGate unit to use manual keys instead. See “Manual Key” on page 35.

3. Create a security policy to permit communication between your private network and the VPN. Policy-based VPNs have an action of IPSEC, where for interface-based VPNs the security policy action is ACCEPT. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 63.

The FortiGate unit implements the Encapsulated Security Payload (ESP) protocol. Internet Key Exchange (IKE) is performed automatically based on pre-shared keys or X.509 digital certificates. As an option, you can specify manual keys. Interface mode, supported in NAT mode only, creates a virtual interface for the local end of a VPN tunnel.

This topic contains the following:

- Auto Key (IKE)
- Manual Key
- Concentrator

Auto Key (IKE)

You can configure VPN peers (or a FortiGate dialup server and a VPN client) to generate unique Internet Key Exchange (IKE) keys automatically during the IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 exchanges.

When you define phase 2 parameters, you can choose any set of phase 1 parameters to set up a secure connection for the tunnel and authenticate the remote peer. Auto Key configuration applies to both tunnel-mode and interface-mode VPNs.
To configure VPN peers go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).

### Auto Key (IKE) page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Phase 1</td>
<td>Creates a new phase 1 tunnel configuration. For more information, see “Phase 1 configuration” on page 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Phase 2</td>
<td>Creates a new phase 2 configuration. For more information, see “Phase 2 configuration” on page 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create FortiClient VPN</td>
<td>Creates a new FortiClient VPN. For more information, see “FortiClient VPN” on page 34.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you want to control how the IKE negotiation process controls traffic when there is no traffic, as well as the length of time the FortiGate unit waits for negotiations to occur, use the `negotiation-timeout` and `auto-negotiation` commands in the CLI.

### Phase 1 configuration

The basic phase 1 settings associate IPsec phase 1 parameters with a remote gateway, if a pre-shared key or digital certificate will be used, and if a special identifier will be used to identify the remote VPN peer or client.

### New Phase 1 page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type a name for the phase 1 definition. The maximum name length is 15 characters for an interface mode VPN, 35 characters for a policy-based VPN. If Remote Gateway is Dialup User, the maximum name length is further reduced depending on the number of dialup tunnels that can be established: by 2 for up to 9 tunnels, by 3 for up to 99 tunnels, 4 for up to 999 tunnels, and so on. For a tunnel mode VPN, the name normally reflects where the remote connection originates. For a route-based tunnel, the FortiGate unit also uses the name for the virtual IPsec interface that it creates automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Remote Gateway         | Select the category of the remote connection:  
  - **Static IP Address** — If the remote peer has a static IP address.  
  - **Dialup User** — If one or more FortiClient or FortiGate dialup clients with dynamic IP addresses will connect to the FortiGate unit.  
  - **Dynamic DNS** — If a remote peer that has a domain name and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service will connect to the FortiGate unit. |
| IP Address             | If you selected Static IP Address, enter the IP address of the remote peer. |
| Dynamic DNS            | If you selected Dynamic DNS, enter the domain name of the remote peer. |
### Local Interface
This option is available in NAT mode only. Select the name of the interface through which remote peers or dialup clients connect to the FortiGate unit.

By default, the local VPN gateway IP address is the IP address of the interface that you selected. Optionally, you can specify a unique IP address for the VPN gateway in the Advanced settings.

### Mode
Select Main (ID Protection) or Aggressive:

- **Main mode** — the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in multiple rounds with encrypted authentication information.
- **Aggressive mode** — the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in single message with authentication information that is not encrypted.

When the remote VPN peer has a dynamic IP address and is authenticated by a pre-shared key, you must select Aggressive mode if there is more than one dialup phase1 configuration for the interface IP address.

When the remote VPN peer has a dynamic IP address and is authenticated by a certificate, you must select Aggressive mode if there is more than one phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address and these phase 1 configurations use different proposals.

### Authentication Method
Select Preshared Key or RSA Signature.

### Pre-shared Key
If you selected Pre-shared Key, enter the pre-shared key that the FortiGate unit will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. You must define the same key at the remote peer or client. The key must contain at least 6 printable characters. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key must consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters.

### Certificate Name
If you selected RSA Signature, select the name of the server certificate that the FortiGate unit will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. For information about obtaining and loading the required server certificate, see the FortiOS User Authentication guide.

### Peer Options
Peer options are available to authenticate VPN peers or clients, depending on the Remote Gateway and Authentication Method settings.

### Accept any peer ID
Accept the local ID of any remote VPN peer or client. The FortiGate unit does not check identifiers (local IDs). You can set Mode to Aggressive or Main.

You can use this option with RSA Signature authentication. But, for highest security, configure a PKI user/group for the peer and set Peer Options to Accept this peer certificate only.
IPsec VPN in the web-based manager

IPsec VPNs for FortiOS 4.0 MR3

28

http://docs.fortinet.com/

Phase 1 advanced configuration settings

You use the advanced parameters to select the encryption and authentication algorithms that the FortiGate unit uses to generate keys for the IKE exchange. You can also select these advanced settings to ensure the smooth operation of phase 1 negotiations.

To configure Phase 1 settings, go to VPN > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1.

Advanced section of the New Phase 1 page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>This is available in NAT mode only. Create a virtual interface for the local end of the VPN tunnel. Select this option to create a route-based VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IKE Version</td>
<td>Select the version of IKE to use. This is available only if IPsec Interface Mode is enabled. For more information about IKE v2, refer to RFC 4306. IKE v2 is not available if Mode is Aggressive. When IKE Version is 2, Mode and XAUTH are not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 Version</td>
<td>Select if you want to use IPv6 addresses for the remote gateway and interface IP addresses. This is available only when Enable IPsec Interface Mode is selected and IPv6 Support is enabled in the administrative settings (System &gt; Admin &gt; Settings).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Local Gateway IP
If you selected *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*, specify an IP address for the local end of the VPN tunnel. Select one of the following:
- **Main Interface IP** — The FortiGate unit obtains the IP address of the interface from the network interface settings.
- **Specify** — Enter a secondary address of the interface selected in the phase 1 **Local Interface** field. For more information, see “Local Interface” on page 27.
You cannot configure Interface mode in a transparent mode VDOM.

### P1 Proposal
Select the encryption and authentication algorithms used to generate keys for protecting negotiations and add encryption and authentication algorithms as required.
You need to select a minimum of one and a maximum of three combinations. The remote peer or client must be configured to use at least one of the proposals that you define.

### Keylife
Enter the time (in seconds) that must pass before the IKE encryption key expires. When the key expires, a new key is generated without interrupting service. The keylife can be from 120 to 172800 seconds.
### Local ID

If the FortiGate unit will act as a VPN client and you are using peer IDs for authentication purposes, enter the identifier that the FortiGate unit will supply to the VPN server during the phase 1 exchange.

If the FortiGate unit will act as a VPN client, and you are using security certificates for authentication, select the distinguished name (DN) of the local server certificate that the FortiGate unit will use for authentication purposes.

If the FortiGate unit is a dialup client and will not be sharing a tunnel with other dialup clients (that is, the tunnel will be dedicated to this Fortinet dialup client), set Mode to Aggressive. Note that this Local ID value must match the peer ID value given for the remote VPN peer’s Peer Options.

### XAuth

This option supports the authentication of dialup clients. It is available for IKE v1 only.

- **Disable** — Select if you do not use XAuth.
- **Enable as Client** — If the FortiGate unit is a dialup client, enter the user name and password that the FortiGate unit will need to authenticate itself to the remote XAuth server.
- **Enable as Server** — This is available only if Remote Gateway is set to Dialup User. Dialup clients authenticate as members of a dialup user group. You must first create a user group for the dialup clients that need access to the network behind the FortiGate unit.

You must also configure the FortiGate unit to forward authentication requests to an external RADIUS or LDAP authentication server.

Select a Server Type setting to determine the type of encryption method to use between the FortiGate unit, the XAuth client and the external authentication server, and then select the user group from the User Group list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Username</th>
<th>Enter the user name that is used for authentication.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Enter the password that is used for authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NAT Traversal

Select the check box if a NAT device exists between the local FortiGate unit and the VPN peer or client. The local FortiGate unit and the VPN peer or client must have the same NAT traversal setting (both selected or both cleared) to connect reliably.
Phase 2 configuration

After IPsec phase 1 negotiations end successfully, you begin phase 2. You configure the phase 2 parameters to define the algorithms that the FortiGate unit may use to encrypt and transfer data for the remainder of the session. During phase 2, you select specific IPsec security associations needed to implement security services and establish a tunnel.

The basic phase 2 settings associate IPsec phase 2 parameters with the phase 1 configuration that specifies the remote end point of the VPN tunnel. In most cases, you need to configure only basic phase 2 settings.

To configure Phase 2 settings, go to VPN > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Phase 2 page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phase 1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advanced</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Phase 2 advanced configuration settings

In phase 2, the FortiGate unit and the VPN peer or client exchange keys again to establish a secure communication channel between them. You select the encryption and authentication algorithms needed to generate keys for protecting the implementation details of Security Associations (SAs). These are called P2 Proposal parameters. The keys are generated automatically using a Diffie-Hellman algorithm.

You can use a number of additional advanced phase 2 settings to enhance the operation of the tunnel.
### Advanced section of New Phase 2 page

**P2 Proposal**
Select the encryption and authentication algorithms that will be proposed to the remote VPN peer. You can specify up to three proposals. To establish a VPN connection, at least one of the proposals that you specify must match configuration on the remote peer.

Initially there are two proposals. *Add* and *Delete* icons are next to the second *Authentication* field.

It is invalid to set both *Encryption* and *Authentication* to NULL.

**Encryption**
Select one of the following symmetric-key algorithms:

- **NULL** — Do not use an encryption algorithm.
- **DES** — Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.
- **3DES** — Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- **AES128** — a 128-bit block Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- **AES192** — a 128-bit block CBC algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- **AES256** — a 128-bit block CBC algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.

**Authentication**
Select one of the following message digests to check the authenticity of messages during an encrypted session:

- **NULL** — Do not use a message digest.
- **MD5** — Message Digest 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- **SHA1** — Secure Hash Algorithm 1, which produces a 160-bit message digest.
- **SHA256** — Secure Hash Algorithm 2, which produces a 256-bit message digest.
- **SHA384** — Secure Hash Algorithm 2, which produces a 384-bit message digest.
- **SHA512** — Secure Hash Algorithm 2, which produces a 512-bit message digest.

**Enable replay detection**
Replay attacks occur when an unauthorized party intercepts a series of IPsec packets and replays them back into the tunnel.

**Enable perfect forward secrecy (PFS)**
Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) improves security by forcing a new Diffie-Hellman exchange whenever keylife expires.

**DH Group**
Select one Diffie-Hellman group (1, 2, 5 or 14). This must match the DH Group that the remote peer or dialup client uses.

**Keylife**
Select the method for determining when the phase 2 key expires: *Seconds*, *KBytes*, or *Both*. If you select *Both*, the key expires when either the time has passed or the number of KB have been processed.

**Autokey Keep Alive**
Select the check box if you want the tunnel to remain active when no data is being processed.
### DHCP-IPSec

Provide IP addresses dynamically to VPN clients. This is available for phase 2 configurations associated with a dialup phase 1 configuration. You also need configure a DHCP server or relay on the private network interface. You must configure the DHCP parameters separately.

If you configure the DHCP server to assign IP addresses based on RADIUS user group attributes, you must also set the Phase 1 Peer Options to Accept peer ID in dialup group and select the appropriate user group. See “Phase 1 configuration” on page 26.

If the FortiGate unit acts as a dialup server and you manually assigned FortiClient dialup clients VIP addresses that match the network behind the dialup server, selecting the check box will cause the FortiGate unit to act as a proxy for the dialup clients.

### Quick Mode Selector

Specify the source and destination IP addresses to be used as selectors for IKE negotiations. If the FortiGate unit is a dialup server, keep the default value of 0.0.0.0/0 unless you need to circumvent problems caused by ambiguous IP addresses between one or more of the private networks making up the VPN. You can specify a single host IP address, an IP address range, or a network address. You may optionally specify source and destination port numbers and a protocol number.

If you are editing an existing phase 2 configuration, the Source address and Destination address fields are unavailable if the tunnel has been configured to use firewall addresses as selectors. This option exists only in the CLI.

### Source address

If the FortiGate unit is a dialup server, enter the source IP address that corresponds to the local senders or network behind the local VPN peer (for example, 172.16.5.0/24 or 172.16.5.0/255.255.255.0 for a subnet, or 172.16.5.1/32 or 172.16.5.1/255.255.255.255 for a server or host, or 192.168.10.[80-100] or 192.168.10.80-192.168.10.100 for an address range). A value of 0.0.0.0/0 means all IP addresses behind the local VPN peer.

If the FortiGate unit is a dialup client, source address must refer to the private network behind the Fortinet dialup client.

### Source port

Enter the port number that the local VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). The range is from 0 to 65535. To specify all ports, type 0.

### Destination address

Enter the destination IP address that corresponds to the recipients or network behind the remote VPN peer (for example, 192.168.20.0/24 for a subnet, or 172.16.5.1/32 for a server or host, or 192.168.10.[80-100] for an address range). A value of 0.0.0.0/0 means all IP addresses behind the remote VPN peer.

### Destination port

Enter the port number that the remote VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). To specify all ports, enter 0.

### Protocol

Enter the IP protocol number of the service. To specify all services, enter 0.
FortiClient VPN

Use the FortiClient VPN configuration settings when configuring an IPsec VPN for FortiClient. When configuring a FortiClient VPN connection, the settings for phase 1 and phase 2 settings are automatically configured by the FortiGate unit. They are set to:

- Remote Gateway — Dialup User
- Mode — Aggressive
- IPSec Interface Mode — Enabled
- Default settings for P1 and P2 Proposal
- XAUTH Enable as Server (Auto)
- IKE mode-config will be enabled
- Peer Option — "Accept any peer ID"

The remainder of the settings use the current FortiGate defaults. Note that FortiClient settings need to match these FortiGate defaults.

If you need to configure advanced settings for the FortiClient VPN, select Edit on the Auto Key (IKE) page (Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE)) and configure the peer options or advanced options.

### New FortiClient VPN page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name for the FortiClient VPN.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Outgoing Interface</td>
<td>Select the local outgoing interface for the VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Select the type of authentication used when logging in to the VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
<td>If Pre-shared Key was selected in Authentication Method, enter the pre-shared key in the field provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Group</td>
<td>Select a user group. You can also create a user group from the drop-down list by selecting Create New.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Range Start IP</td>
<td>Enter the start IP address for the DHCP address range for the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Range End IP</td>
<td>Enter the end IP address for the address range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet Mask</td>
<td>Enter the subnet mask.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPv4 Split Tunnel</td>
<td>Enabled by default, this option enables the FortiClient user to use the VPN to access internal resources while other Internet access is not sent over the VPN, alleviating potential traffic bottlenecks in the VPN connection. Disable this option to have all traffic sent through the VPN tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| DNS Server | Select which DNS server to use for this VPN:  
  - Use System DNS — Use the same DNS servers as the FortiGate unit. These are configured at System > Interface > DNS. This is the default option.  
  - Specify — Specify the IP address of a different DNS server. |
Manual Key

Use manual keys only if it is unavoidable. There are potential difficulties in keeping keys confidential and in propagating changed keys to remote VPN peers securely.

If required, you can manually define cryptographic keys for establishing an IPsec VPN tunnel. You would define manual keys in situations where:

- you require prior knowledge of the encryption or authentication key (that is, one of the VPN peers requires a specific IPsec encryption or authentication key).
- you need to disable encryption and authentication.

In both cases, you do not specify IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 parameters; you define manual keys by going to VPN > IPsec > Manual Key instead.

Manual key configuration settings

If you are not familiar with the security policies, SAs, selectors, and SA databases for your particular installation, do not attempt these procedures without qualified assistance.

If one of the VPN devices is manually keyed, the other VPN device must also be manually keyed with the identical authentication and encryption keys. In addition, it is essential that both VPN devices be configured with complementary Security Parameter Index (SPI) settings. The administrators of the devices need to cooperate to achieve this.

Each SPI identifies a Security Association (SA). The value is placed in ESP datagrams to link the datagrams to the SA. When an ESP datagram is received, the recipient refers to the SPI to determine which SA applies to the datagram. You must manually specify an SPI for each SA. There is an SA for each direction, so for each VPN you must specify two SPIs, a local SPI and a remote SPI, to cover bidirectional communications between two VPN devices.

To add a manual key, go to VPN > IPsec > Manual Key and select Create New.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Manual Key page</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type a name for the VPN tunnel. The maximum name length is 15 characters for an interface mode VPN, 35 characters for a policy-based VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local SPI</td>
<td>Type a hexadecimal number (up to 8 characters, 0-9, a-f) that represents the SA that handles outbound traffic on the local FortiGate unit. The valid range is from 0x100 to 0xffffffff. This value must match the Remote SPI value in the manual key configuration at the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote SPI</td>
<td>Type a hexadecimal number (up to 8 characters, 0-9, a-f) that represents the SA that handles inbound traffic on the local FortiGate unit. The valid range is from 0x100 to 0xffffffff. This value must match the Local SPI value in the manual key configuration at the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the public interface to the remote peer. The address identifies the recipient of ESP datagrams.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Concentrator

In a hub-and-spoke configuration, policy-based VPN connections to a number of remote peers radiate from a single, central FortiGate unit. Site-to-site connections between the remote peers do not exist; however, you can establish VPN tunnels between any two of the remote peers through the FortiGate unit’s “hub”.

In a hub-and-spoke network, all VPN tunnels terminate at the hub. The peers that connect to the hub are known as “spokes”. The hub functions as a concentrator on the network, managing all VPN connections between the spokes. VPN traffic passes from one tunnel to the other through the hub.
You define a concentrator to include spokes in the hub-and-spoke configuration. You create the concentrator in VPN > IPSec > Concentrator and select Create New. A concentrator configuration specifies which spokes to include in an IPsec hub-and-spoke configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New VPN Concentrator page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concentrator Name</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Available Tunnels</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Members</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IPsec Monitor**

You can use the IPsec Monitor to view activity on IPsec VPN tunnels and start or stop those tunnels. The display provides a list of addresses, proxy IDs, and timeout information for all active tunnels, including tunnel mode and route-based (interface mode) tunnels.

To view the IPsec monitor, go to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor.

For dialup VPNs, the list provides status information about the VPN tunnels established by dialup clients, and their IP addresses.

For static IP or dynamic DNS VPNs, the list provides status and IP addressing information about VPN tunnels, active or not, to remote peers that have static IP addresses or domain names. You can also start and stop individual tunnels from the list.
Auto Key phase 1 parameters

This chapter provides detailed step-by-step procedures for configuring a FortiGate unit to accept a connection from a remote peer or dialup client. The phase 1 parameters identify the remote peer or clients and support authentication through preshared keys or digital certificates. You can increase access security further using peer identifiers, certificate distinguished names, group names, or the FortiGate extended authentication (XAuth) option for authentication purposes.

For more information on phase 1 parameters in the web-based manager, see “Phase 1 configuration” on page 26.

The following topics are included in this section:
- Overview
- Defining the tunnel ends
- Choosing main mode or aggressive mode
- Authenticating the FortiGate unit
- Authenticating remote peers and clients
- Defining IKE negotiation parameters
- Using XAuth authentication

Overview

To configure IPsec phase 1 settings, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1. IPsec phase 1 settings define:
- the remote and local ends of the IPsec tunnel
- if phase 1 parameters are exchanged in multiple rounds with encrypted authentication information (main mode) or in a single message with authentication information that is not encrypted (aggressive mode)
- if a preshared key or digital certificates will be used to authenticate the FortiGate unit to the VPN peer or dialup client
- if the VPN peer or dialup client is required to authenticate to the FortiGate unit. A remote peer or dialup client can authenticate by peer ID or, if the FortiGate unit authenticates by certificate, it can authenticate by peer certificate.
- the IKE negotiation proposals for encryption and authentication
- optional XAuth authentication, which requires the remote user to enter a user name and password. A FortiGate VPN server can act as an XAuth server to authenticate dialup users. A FortiGate unit that is a dialup client can also be configured as an XAuth client to authenticate itself to the VPN server.

For all the phase 1 web-based manager fields, see “Phase 1 configuration” on page 26.
Defining the tunnel ends

To begin defining the phase 1 configuration, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1. Enter a descriptive name for the VPN tunnel. This is particularly important if you will create several tunnels.

The phase 1 configuration mainly defines the ends of the IPsec tunnel. The remote end is the remote gateway with which the FortiGate unit exchanges IPsec packets. The local end is the FortiGate interface that sends and receives IPsec packets.

The remote gateway can be:
- a static IP address
- a domain name with a dynamic IP address
- a dialup client

A statically addressed remote gateway is the simplest to configure. You specify the IP address. Unless restricted in the security policy, either the remote peer or a peer on the network behind the FortiGate unit can bring up the tunnel.

If the remote peer has a domain name and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service, you need to specify only the domain name. The FortiGate unit performs a DNS query to determine the appropriate IP address. Unless restricted in the security policy, either the remote peer or a peer on the network behind the FortiGate unit can bring up the tunnel.

If the remote peer is a dialup client, only the dialup client can bring up the tunnel. The IP address of the client is not known until it connects to the FortiGate unit. This configuration is a typical way to provide a VPN for client PCs running VPN client software such as the FortiClient Endpoint Security application.

The local end of the VPN tunnel, the Local Interface, is the FortiGate interface that sends and receives the IPsec packets. This is usually the public interface of the FortiGate unit that is connected to the Internet. Packets from this interface pass to the private network through a security policy.

By default, the local VPN gateway is the IP address of the selected Local Interface. If you are configuring an interface mode VPN, you can optionally use a secondary IP address of the Local Interface as the local gateway.

Choosing main mode or aggressive mode

The FortiGate unit and the remote peer or dialup client exchange phase 1 parameters in either Main mode or Aggressive mode. This choice does not apply if you use IKE version 2, which is available only for route-based configurations.

- In Main mode, the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in multiple rounds with encrypted authentication information.
In Aggressive mode, the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in single message with authentication information that is not encrypted. Although Main mode is more secure, you must select Aggressive mode if there is more than one dialup phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address, and the remote VPN peer or client is authenticated using an identifier (local ID). Descriptions of the peer options in this guide indicate whether Main or Aggressive mode is required.

Choosing the IKE version

If you create a route-based VPN, you have the option of selecting IKE version 2. Otherwise, IKE version 1 is used.
IKEv2, defined in RFC 4306, simplifies the negotiation process that creates the security association (SA).
If you select IKEv2:
- There is no choice in Phase 1 of Aggressive or Main mode.
- FortiOS does not support Peer Options or Local ID.
- Extended Authentication (XAUTH) is not available.
- You can select only one DH Group.

Authenticating the FortiGate unit

The FortiGate unit can authenticate itself to remote peers or dialup clients using either a pre-shared key or an RSA Signature (certificate).

Authenticating the FortiGate unit with digital certificates

To authenticate the FortiGate unit using digital certificates, you must have the required certificates installed on the remote peer and on the FortiGate unit. The signed server certificate on one peer is validated by the presence of the root certificate installed on the other peer. If you use certificates to authenticate the FortiGate unit, you can also require the remote peers or dialup clients to authenticate using certificates.

For more information about obtaining and installing certificates, see the FortiOS User Authentication guide.

To authenticate the FortiGate unit using digital certificates

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Create a new phase 1 configuration or edit an existing phase 1 configuration.
3. Include appropriate entries as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name that reflects the origination of the remote connection. For interface mode, the name can be up to 15 characters long.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select the nature of the remote connection. Each option changes the available fields you must configure. For more information, see “Defining the tunnel ends” on page 40.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Authenticating the FortiGate unit

**Auto Key phase 1 parameters**

**Local Interface**

Select the interface that is the local end of the IPsec tunnel. For more information, see “Defining the tunnel ends” on page 40. This interface cannot be a loopback interface.

**Mode**

Select a mode. It is easier to use aggressive mode.
- In **Main mode**, parameters are exchanged in multiple encrypted rounds.
- In **Aggressive mode**, parameters are exchanged in a single unencrypted message.

Aggressive mode must be used when the remote VPN peer or client has a dynamic IP address, or the remote VPN peer or client will be authenticated using an identifier (local ID). For more information, see “Choosing main mode or aggressive mode” on page 40.

**Authentication Method**

Select **RSA Signature**.

**Certificate Name**

Select the name of the server certificate that the FortiGate unit will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. You must obtain and load the required server certificate before this selection. See the FortiOS User Authentication guide. If you have not loaded any certificates, use the certificate named **Fortinet_Factory**.

**Peer Options**

Peer options define the authentication requirements for remote peers or dialup clients. They are not for your FortiGate unit itself. See “Authenticating remote peers and clients” on page 44.

**Advanced**

You can use the default settings for most phase 1 configurations. Changes are required only if your network requires them. These settings include IKE version, DNS server, P1 proposal encryption and authentication settings, and XAuth settings. See “Defining IKE negotiation parameters” on page 49.

---

4 If you are configuring authentication parameters for a dialup user group, optionally define extended authentication (XAuth) parameters in the Advanced section. See “Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server” on page 54.

5 Select **OK**.

**Authenticating the FortiGate unit with a pre-shared key**

The simplest way to authenticate a FortiGate unit to its remote peers or dialup clients is by means of a pre-shared key. This is less secure than using certificates, especially if it is used alone, without requiring peer IDs or extended authentication (XAuth). Also, you need to have a secure way to distribute the pre-shared key to the peers.
If you use pre-shared key authentication alone, all remote peers and dialup clients must be configured with the same pre-shared key. Optionally, you can configure remote peers and dialup clients with unique pre-shared keys. On the FortiGate unit, these are configured in user accounts, not in the phase_1 settings. For more information, see “Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys” on page 47.

The pre-shared key must contain at least 6 printable characters and best practices dictate that it be known only to network administrators. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key must consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters.

If you authenticate the FortiGate unit using a pre-shared key, you can require remote peers or dialup clients to authenticate using peer IDs, but not client certificates.

To authenticate the FortiGate unit with a pre-shared key

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Create a new phase 1 configuration or edit an existing phase 1 configuration.
3. Include appropriate entries as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name that reflects the origination of the remote connection.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select the nature of the remote connection. For more information, see “Defining the tunnel ends” on page 40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the interface that is the local end of the IPsec tunnel. For more information, see “Defining the tunnel ends” on page 40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Select Main or Aggressive mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In Main mode, the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in multiple rounds with encrypted authentication information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In Aggressive mode, the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in single message with authentication information that is not encrypted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the remote VPN peer or client has a dynamic IP address, or the remote VPN peer or client will be authenticated using an identifier (local ID), you must select Aggressive mode if there is more than one dialup phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information, see “Choosing main mode or aggressive mode” on page 40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Select Pre-shared Key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key that the FortiGate unit will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. You must define the same value at the remote peer or client. The key must contain at least 6 printable characters and best practices dictate that it only be known by network administrators. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key must consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 If you are configuring authentication parameters for a dialup user group, optionally define extended authentication (XAuth) parameters. See “Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server” on page 54.

5 Select OK.

## Authenticating remote peers and clients

Certificates or pre-shared keys restrict who can access the VPN tunnel, but they do not identify or authenticate the remote peers or dialup clients. You have the following options for authentication:

### Table 3: Methods of authenticating remote VPN peers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certificates or Pre-shared key</th>
<th>Local ID</th>
<th>User account pre-shared keys</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See “Enabling VPN access for specific certificate holders” on page 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Either</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>See “Enabling VPN access by peer identifier” on page 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared key</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>See “Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys” on page 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared key</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>See “Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys” on page 47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For authentication of users of the remote peer or dialup client device, see “Using XAuth authentication” on page 54.

### Enabling VPN access for specific certificate holders

When a VPN peer or dialup client is configured to authenticate using digital certificates, it sends the DN of its certificate to the FortiGate unit. This DN can be used to allow VPN access for the certificate holder. That is, a FortiGate unit can be configured to deny connections to all remote peers and dialup clients except the one having the specified DN.

### Before you begin

The following procedures assume that you already have an existing phase 1 configuration (see “Authenticating the FortiGate unit with digital certificates” on page 41). Follow the procedures below to add certificate-based authentication parameters to the existing configuration.
Before you begin, you must obtain the certificate DN of the remote peer or dialup client. If you are using the FortiClient application as a dialup client, refer to FortiClient online Help for information about how to view the certificate DN. To view the certificate DN of a FortiGate unit, see “To view server certificate information and obtain the local DN” on page 45.

Use the `config user peer` CLI command to load the DN value into the FortiGate configuration. For example, if a remote VPN peer uses server certificates issued by your own organization, you would enter information similar to the following:

```plaintext
config user peer
edit DN_FG1000
  set cn 192.168.2.160
  set cn-type ipv4
end
```

The value that you specify to identify the entry (for example, DN_FG1000) is displayed in the Accept this peer certificate only list in the IPsec phase 1 configuration when you return to the web-based manager.

If the remote VPN peer has a CA-issued certificate to support a higher level of credibility, you would enter information similar to the following:

```plaintext
config user peer
edit CA_FG1000
  set ca CA_Cert_1
  set subject FG1000_at_site1
end
```

The value that you specify to identify the entry (for example, CA_FG1000) is displayed in the Accept this peer certificate only list in the IPsec phase 1 configuration when you return to the web-based manager. For more information about these CLI commands, see the “user” chapter of the FortiGate CLI Reference.

A group of certificate holders can be created based on existing user accounts for dialup clients. To create the user accounts for dialup clients, see the “User” chapter of the FortiGate Administration Guide. To create the certificate group afterward, use the `config user peergrp` CLI command. See the “user” chapter of the FortiGate CLI Reference.

To view server certificate information and obtain the local DN

1. Go to System > Certificates > Local Certificates.
2. Note the CN value in the Subject field (for example, CN = 172.16.10.125, CN = info@fortinet.com, or CN = www.example.com).

To view CA root certificate information and obtain the CA certificate name

1. Go to System > Certificates > CA Certificates.
2. Note the value in the Name column (for example, CA_Cert_1).

Configuring certificate authentication for a VPN

With peer certificates loaded, peer users and peer groups defined, you can configure your VPN to authenticate users by certificate.

To enable access for a specific certificate holder or a group of certificate holders

1. At the FortiGate VPN server, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. In the list of defined configurations, select the phase 1 configuration and edit it.
3. From the Authentication Method list, select RSA Signature.
4. From the Certificate Name list, select the name of the server certificate that the FortiGate unit will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client.

5. Under Peer Options, select one of these options:
   - To accept a specific certificate holder, select Accept this peer certificate only and select the name of the certificate that belongs to the remote peer or dialup client. The certificate DN must be added to the FortiGate configuration through CLI commands before it can be selected here. See “Before you begin” on page 44.
   - To accept dialup clients who are members of a certificate group, select Accept this peer certificate group only and select the name of the group. The group must be added to the FortiGate configuration through CLI commands before it can be selected here. See “Before you begin” on page 44.

6. If you want the FortiGate VPN server to supply the DN of a local server certificate for authentication purposes, select Advanced and then from the Local ID list, select the DN of the certificate that the FortiGate VPN server is to use.

7. Select OK.

Enabling VPN access by peer identifier

Whether you use certificates or pre-shared keys to authenticate the FortiGate unit, you can require that remote peers or clients have a particular peer ID. This adds another piece of information that is required to gain access to the VPN. More than one FortiGate/FortiClient dialup client may connect through the same VPN tunnel when the dialup clients share a preshared key and assume the same identifier.

A peer ID, also called local ID, can be up to 63 characters long containing standard regular expression characters. Local ID is set in phase1 Aggressive Mode configuration. You cannot require a peer ID for a remote peer or client that uses a pre-shared key and has a static IP address.

To authenticate remote peers or dialup clients using one peer ID

1. At the FortiGate VPN server, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. In the list, select a phase 1 configuration and edit its parameters.
3. Select Aggressive mode in any of the following cases:
   - the FortiGate VPN server authenticates a FortiGate dialup client that uses a dedicated tunnel
   - a FortiGate unit has a dynamic IP address and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service
   - FortiGate/FortiClient dialup clients sharing the same preshared key and local ID connect through the same VPN tunnel
4. Select Accept this peer ID and type the identifier into the corresponding field.
5. Select OK.

To assign an identifier (local ID) to a FortiGate unit

Use this procedure to assign a peer ID to a FortiGate unit that acts as a remote peer or dialup client.

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. In the list, select a phase 1 configuration and edit its parameters.
3. Select Advanced.
4. In the Local ID field, type the identifier that the FortiGate unit will use to identify itself.
5 Set Mode to Aggressive if any of the following conditions apply:

- The FortiGate unit is a dialup client that will use a unique ID to connect to a FortiGate dialup server through a dedicated tunnel.
- The FortiGate unit has a dynamic IP address, subscribes to a dynamic DNS service, and will use a unique ID to connect to the remote VPN peer through a dedicated tunnel.
- The FortiGate unit is a dialup client that shares the specified ID with multiple dialup clients to connect to a FortiGate dialup server through the same tunnel.

6 Select OK.

To configure the FortiClient application

Follow this procedure to add a peer ID to an existing FortiClient configuration:

1 Start the FortiClient application.
2 Go to VPN > Connections, select the existing configuration.
3 Select Advanced > Edit > Advanced.
4 Under Policy, select Config.
5 In the Local ID field, type the identifier that will be shared by all dialup clients. This value must match the Accept this peer ID value that you specified previously in the phase 1 gateway configuration on the FortiGate unit.
6 Select OK to close all dialog boxes.
7 Configure all dialup clients the same way using the same preshared key and local ID.

Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys

You can permit access only to remote peers or dialup clients that have pre-shared keys and/or peer IDs configured in user accounts on the FortiGate unit.

If you want two VPN peers (or a FortiGate unit and a dialup client) to accept reciprocal connections based on peer IDs, you must enable the exchange of their identifiers when you define the phase 1 parameters.

The following procedures assume that you already have an existing phase 1 configuration (see “Authenticating the FortiGate unit with digital certificates” on page 41). Follow the procedures below to add ID checking to the existing configuration.

Before you begin, you must obtain the identifier (local ID) of the remote peer or dialup client. If you are using the FortiClient Endpoint Security application as a dialup client, refer to the Authenticating FortiClient Dialup Clients Technical Note to view or assign an identifier. To assign an identifier to a FortiGate dialup client or a FortiGate unit that has a dynamic IP address and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service, see “To assign an identifier (local ID) to a FortiGate unit” on page 46.

If required, a dialup user group can be created from existing user accounts for dialup clients. To create the user accounts and user groups, see the User Authentication Guide.

The following procedure supports FortiGate/FortiClient dialup clients that use unique preshared keys and/or peer IDs. The client must have an account on the FortiGate unit and be a member of the dialup user group.

The dialup user group must be added to the FortiGate configuration before it can be selected. For more information, see the User Authentication Guide.

The FortiGate dialup server compares the local ID that you specify at each dialup client to the FortiGate user-account user name. The dialup-client preshared key is compared to a FortiGate user-account password.
To authenticate dialup clients using unique preshared keys and/or peer IDs

1. At the FortiGate VPN server, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. In the list, select the Edit icon of a phase 1 configuration to edit its parameters.
3. If the clients have unique peer IDs, set Mode to Aggressive.
4. Clear the Pre-shared Key field.
   The user account password will be used as the preshared key.
5. Select Accept peer ID in dialup group and then select the group name from the list of user groups.
6. Select OK.

Follow this procedure to add a unique pre-shared key and unique peer ID to an existing FortiClient configuration.

To configure FortiClient - pre-shared key and peer ID

1. Start the FortiClient Endpoint Security application.
2. Go to VPN > Connections, select the existing configuration.
4. In the Preshared Key field, type the FortiGate password that belongs to the dialup client (for example, 1234546).
   The user account password will be used as the preshared key.
5. Select Advanced.
6. Under Policy, select Config.
7. In the Local ID field, type the FortiGate user name that you assigned previously to the dialup client (for example, FortiClient1).
8. Select OK to close all dialog boxes.

Configure all FortiClient dialup clients this way using unique preshared keys and local IDs.

Follow this procedure to add a unique pre-shared key to an existing FortiClient configuration.

To configure FortiClient - preshared key only

1. Start the FortiClient Endpoint Security application.
2. Go to VPN > Connections, select the existing configuration.
4. In the Preshared Key field, type the user name, followed by a “+” sign, followed by the password that you specified previously in the user account settings on the FortiGate unit (for example, FC2+1FG6LK).
5. Select OK to close all dialog boxes.

Configure all the FortiClient dialup clients this way using their unique peer ID and pre-shared key values.
Defining IKE negotiation parameters

In phase 1, the two peers exchange keys to establish a secure communication channel between them. As part of the phase 1 process, the two peers authenticate each other and negotiate a way to encrypt further communications for the duration of the session. For more information see “Authenticating remote peers and clients” on page 44. The P1 Proposal parameters select the encryption and authentication algorithms that are used to generate keys for protecting negotiations.

The IKE negotiation parameters determine:

- which encryption algorithms may be applied for converting messages into a form that only the intended recipient can read
- which authentication hash may be used for creating a keyed hash from a preshared or private key
- which Diffie-Hellman group (DH Group) will be used to generate a secret session key

Phase 1 negotiations (in main mode or aggressive mode) begin as soon as a remote VPN peer or client attempts to establish a connection with the FortiGate unit. Initially, the remote peer or dialup client sends the FortiGate unit a list of potential cryptographic parameters along with a session ID. The FortiGate unit compares those parameters to its own list of advanced phase 1 parameters and responds with its choice of matching parameters to use for authenticating and encrypting packets. The two peers handle the exchange of encryption keys between them, and authenticate the exchange through a preshared key or a digital signature.

Generating keys to authenticate an exchange

The FortiGate unit supports the generation of secret session keys automatically using a Diffie-Hellman algorithm. These algorithms are defined in RFC 2409. The Keylife setting in the P1 Proposal area determines the amount of time before the phase 1 key expires. Phase 1 negotiations are rekeyed automatically when there is an active security association. See “Dead peer detection” on page 53.

![You can enable or disable automatic rekeying between IKE peers through the phase1-rekey attribute of the config system global CLI command. For more information, see the “system” chapter of the FortiGate CLI Reference.](image)

![When in FIPS-CC mode, the FortiGate unit requires DH key exchange to use values at least 3072 bits long. However most browsers need the key size set to 1024. You can set the minimum size of the DH keys in the CLI.](image)

When you use a preshared key (shared secret) to set up two-party authentication, the remote VPN peer or client and the FortiGate unit must both be configured with the same preshared key. Each party uses a session key derived from the Diffie-Hellman exchange to create an authentication key, which is used to sign a known combination of inputs using an authentication algorithm (such as HMAC-MD5, HMAC-SHA-1, or HMAC-SHA-256). Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) is a method for calculating an authentication code using a hash function plus a secret key, and is defined in RFC 2104. Each party signs a different combination of inputs and the other party verifies that the same result can be computed.
Defining IKE negotiation parameters

When you use preshared keys to authenticate VPN peers or clients, you must distribute matching information to all VPN peers and/or clients whenever the preshared key changes.

As an alternative, the remote peer or dialup client and FortiGate unit can exchange digital signatures to validate each other’s identity with respect to their public keys. In this case, the required digital certificates must be installed on the remote peer and on the FortiGate unit. By exchanging certificate DNs, the signed server certificate on one peer is validated by the presence of the root certificate installed on the other peer.

The following procedure assumes that you already have a phase 1 definition that describes how remote VPN peers and clients will be authenticated when they attempt to connect to a local FortiGate unit. For information about the Local ID and XAuth options, see “Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys” on page 47 and “Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server” on page 54. Follow this procedure to add IKE negotiation parameters to the existing definition.

**Defining IKE negotiation parameters**

1. Go to **VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE)**.
2. In the list, select the **Edit** button to edit the phase 1 parameters for a particular remote gateway.
3. Select **Advanced** and include appropriate entries as follows:

SHA-256, SHA-384 and SHA-512 are not accelerated by some FortiASIC processors (including FortiASIC network processors and security processors). As a result, using SHA-256, SHA-384 and SHA-512 may reduce the performance of the FortiGate unit more significantly than SHA-1 which is accelerated by all FortiASIC processors.
Select the encryption and authentication algorithms that will be used to generate keys for protecting negotiations. Add or delete encryption and authentication algorithms as required. Select a minimum of one and a maximum of three combinations. The remote peer must be configured to use at least one of the proposals that you define.

You can select any of the following symmetric-key algorithms:
- DES—Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.
- 3DES—Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- AES128—A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- AES192—A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- AES256—A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.

You can select one of the following message digests to check the authenticity of messages during phase 1 negotiations:
- MD5—Message Digest 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- SHA1—Secure Hash Algorithm 1, which produces a 160-bit message digest.
- SHA-256—Secure Hash Algorithm 256, which produces a 256-bit message digest.
- SHA-384—Secure Hash Algorithm 384, which produces a 384-bit message digest.
- SHA-512—Secure Hash Algorithm 512, which produces a 512-bit message digest.

To specify a third combination, use the add button beside the fields for the second combination.

SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512 are not accelerated by some FortiASIC processors (including FortiASIC network processors and security processors). As a result, using SHA-256, SHA-384 and SHA-512 may reduce the performance of the FortiGate unit more significantly than SHA-1 which is accelerated by all FortiASIC processors.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DH Group</strong></td>
<td>Select one or more Diffie-Hellman groups from DH group 1, 2, and 5. When using aggressive mode, DH groups cannot be negotiated. If both VPN peers (or a VPN server and its client) have static IP addresses and use aggressive mode, select a single DH group. The setting on the FortiGate unit must be identical to the setting on the remote peer or dialup client. When the remote VPN peer or client has a dynamic IP address and uses aggressive mode, select up to three DH groups on the FortiGate unit and one DH group on the remote peer or dialup client. The setting on the remote peer or dialup client must be identical to one of the selections on the FortiGate unit. If the VPN peer or client employs main mode, you can select multiple DH groups. At least one of the settings on the remote peer or dialup client must be identical to the selections on the FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keylife</strong></td>
<td>Type the amount of time (in seconds) that will be allowed to pass before the IKE encryption key expires. When the key expires, a new key is generated without interrupting service. The keylife can be from 120 to 172800 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nat-traversal</strong></td>
<td>Enable this option if a NAT device exists between the local FortiGate unit and the VPN peer or client. The local FortiGate unit and the VPN peer or client must have the same NAT traversal setting (both selected or both cleared). When in doubt, enable NAT-traversal. See “NAT traversal” on page 52.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keepalive Frequency</strong></td>
<td>If you enabled NAT traversal, enter a keepalive frequency setting. The value represents an interval from 0 to 900 seconds where the connection will be maintained with no activity. For additional security this value must be as low as possible. See “NAT keepalive frequency” on page 53.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dead Peer Detection</strong></td>
<td>Enable this option to reestablish VPN tunnels on idle connections and clean up dead IKE peers if required. This feature minimizes the traffic required to check if a VPN peer is available or unavailable (dead). See “Dead peer detection” on page 53.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Select OK.

**NAT traversal**

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a way to convert private IP addresses to publicly routable Internet addresses and vise versa. When an IP packet passes through a NAT device, the source or destination address in the IP header is modified. FortiGate units support NAT version 1 (encapsulate on port 500 with non-IKE marker), version 3 (encapsulate on port 4500 with non-ESP marker), and compatible versions.
NAT cannot be performed on IPsec packets in ESP tunnel mode because the packets do not contain a port number. As a result, the packets cannot be demultiplexed. To work around this, the FortiGate unit provides a way to protect IPsec packet headers from NAT modifications. When the Nat-traversal option is enabled, outbound encrypted packets are wrapped inside a UDP IP header that contains a port number. This extra encapsulation allows NAT devices to change the port number without modifying the IPsec packet directly.

To provide the extra layer of encapsulation on IPsec packets, the Nat-traversal option must be enabled whenever a NAT device exists between two FortiGate VPN peers or a FortiGate unit and a dialup client such as FortiClient. On the receiving end, the FortiGate unit or FortiClient removes the extra layer of encapsulation before decrypting the packet.

**NAT keepalive frequency**

When a NAT device performs network address translation on a flow of packets, the NAT device determines how long the new address will remain valid if the flow of traffic stops (for example, the connected VPN peer may be idle). The device may reclaim and reuse a NAT address when a connection remains idle for too long.

To work around this, when you enable NAT traversal specify how often the FortiGate unit sends periodic keepalive packets through the NAT device in order to ensure that the NAT address mapping does not change during the lifetime of a session. To be effective, the keepalive interval must be smaller than the session lifetime value used by the NAT device. The keepalive packet is a 138-byte ISAKMP exchange.

**Dead peer detection**

Sometimes, due to routing issues or other difficulties, the communication link between a FortiGate unit and a VPN peer or client may go down—packets could be lost if the connection is left to time out on its own. The FortiGate unit provides a mechanism called Dead Peer Detection (DPD), sometimes referred to as gateway detection or ping server, to prevent this situation and reestablish IKE negotiations automatically before a connection times out: the active phase 1 security associations are caught and renegotiated (rekeyed) before the phase 1 encryption key expires.

By default, DPD sends probe messages every five seconds by default (see `dpd-retryinterval` in the FortiGate CLI Reference). If you are experiencing high network traffic, you can experiment with increasing the ping interval. However longer intervals will require more traffic to detect dead peers which will result in more traffic.

In the web-based manager, the Dead Peer Detection option can be enabled when you define advanced phase 1 options. The `config vpn ipsec phase1` CLI command supports additional options for specifying a retry count and a retry interval.

For more information about these commands and the related `config router gwdetect` CLI command, see the FortiGate CLI Reference.

For example, enter the following CLI commands to configure dead peer detection on the existing IPsec Phase1 configuration called `test` to use 15 second intervals and to wait for 3 missed attempts before declaring the peer dead and taking action.

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phase1
edit test
set dpd enable
set dpd-retryinveral 15
set dpd-retrycount 3
next
end
```
Using XAuth authentication

Extended authentication (XAuth) increases security by requiring the remote dialup client user to authenticate in a separate exchange at the end of phase 1. XAuth draws on existing FortiGate user group definitions and uses established authentication mechanisms such as PAP, CHAP, RADIUS and LDAP to authenticate dialup clients. You can configure a FortiGate unit to function either as an XAuth server or an XAuth client.

This section includes:
- Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server
- Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth client

Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server

A FortiGate unit can act as an XAuth server for dialup clients. When the phase 1 negotiation completes, the FortiGate unit challenges the user for a user name and password. It then forwards the user’s credentials to an external RADIUS or LDAP server for verification.

If the user records on the RADIUS server have suitably configured Framed-IP-Address fields, you can assign client virtual IP addresses by XAuth instead of from a DHCP address range. See “Assigning VIPs by RADIUS user group” on page 119.

The authentication protocol to use for XAuth depends on the capabilities of the authentication server and the XAuth client:
- Select PAP whenever possible.
- You must select PAP for all implementations of LDAP and some implementations of Microsoft RADIUS.
- Select AUTO when the authentication server supports CHAP but the XAuth client does not. The FortiGate unit will use PAP to communicate with the XAuth client and CHAP to communicate with the authentication server.

To authenticate a dialup user group using XAuth settings

Before you begin, create user accounts and user groups to identify the dialup clients that need to access the network behind the FortiGate dialup server. If password protection will be provided through an external RADIUS or LDAP server, you must configure the FortiGate dialup server to forward authentication requests to the authentication server. For information about these topics, see the FortiGate User Authentication Guide.

1. At the FortiGate dialup server, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. In the list, select the Edit icon of a phase 1 configuration to edit its parameters for a particular remote gateway.
3. Select Advanced.
4. Under XAuth, select Enable as Server.
5 The Server Type setting determines the type of encryption method to use between the XAuth client, the FortiGate unit and the authentication server. Select one of the following options:
   - **PAP**—Password Authentication Protocol.
   - **CHAP**—Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol.
   - **AUTO**—Use PAP between the XAuth client and the FortiGate unit, and CHAP between the FortiGate unit and the authentication server.

6 From the **User Group** list, select the user group that needs to access the private network behind the FortiGate unit. The group must be added to the FortiGate configuration before it can be selected here.

7 Select **OK**.

**Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth client**

If the FortiGate unit acts as a dialup client, the remote peer, acting as an XAuth server, might require a user name and password. You can configure the FortiGate unit as an XAuth client, with its own user name and password, which it provides when challenged.

**To configure the FortiGate dialup client as an XAuth client**

1 At the FortiGate dialup client, go to **VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE)**.
2 In the list, select a phase 1 configuration and select **Edit**.
3 Select **Advanced**.
4 Under **XAuth**, select **Enable as Client**.
5 In the **Username** field, type the FortiGate PAP, CHAP, RADIUS, or LDAP user name that the FortiGate XAuth server will compare to its records when the FortiGate XAuth client attempts to connect.
6 In the **Password** field, type the password to associate with the user name.
7 Select **OK**.
Phase 2 parameters

This section describes the phase 2 parameters that are required to establish communication through a VPN.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Basic phase 2 settings
- Advanced phase 2 settings
- Configure the phase 2 parameters

Basic phase 2 settings

After IPsec VPN phase 1 negotiations complete successfully, phase 2 negotiation begins. Phase 2 parameters define the algorithms that the FortiGate unit can use to encrypt and transfer data for the remainder of the session. The basic phase 2 settings associate IPsec phase 2 parameters with a phase 1 configuration.

When defining phase 2 parameters, you can choose any set of phase 1 parameters to set up a secure connection and authenticate the remote peer.

For more information on phase 2 settings in the web-based manager, see “Phase 2 configuration” on page 31.

The information and procedures in this section do not apply to VPN peers that perform negotiations using manual keys. Refer to “Manual-key configurations” on page 183 instead.

Advanced phase 2 settings

The following additional advanced phase 2 settings are available to enhance the operation of the tunnel:

- P2 Proposals
- Replay detection
- Perfect forward secrecy (PFS)
- Keystream
- Quick mode selectors
Advanced phase 2 settings

P2 Proposals

In phase 2, the VPN peer or client and the FortiGate unit exchange keys again to establish a secure communication channel. The P2 Proposal parameters select the encryption and authentication algorithms needed to generate keys for protecting the implementation details of Security Associations (SAs). The keys are generated automatically using a Diffie-Hellman algorithm.

Replay detection

IPsec tunnels can be vulnerable to replay attacks. Replay detection enables the FortiGate unit to check all IPsec packets to see if they have been received before. If any encrypted packets arrive out of order, the FortiGate unit discards them.

Perfect forward secrecy (PFS)

By default, phase 2 keys are derived from the session key created in phase 1. Perfect forward secrecy forces a new Diffie-Hellman exchange when the tunnel starts and whenever the phase 2 keylife expires, causing a new key to be generated each time. This exchange ensures that the keys created in phase 2 are unrelated to the phase 1 keys or any other keys generated automatically in phase 2.

Keylife

The Keylife setting sets a limit on the length of time that a phase 2 key can be used. The default units are seconds. Alternatively, you can set a limit on the number of kilobytes (KB) of processed data, or both. If you select both, the key expires when either the time has passed or the number of KB have been processed. When the phase 2 key expires, a new key is generated without interrupting service.

Auto-negotiate

By default, the phase 2 security association (SA) is not negotiated until a peer attempts to send data. The triggering packet and some subsequent packets are dropped until the SA is established. Applications normally resend this data, so there is no loss, but there might be a noticeable delay in response to the user.

Automatically establishing the SA can also be important for a dialup peer. This ensures that the VPN tunnel is available for peers at the server end to initiate traffic to the dialup peer. Otherwise, the VPN tunnel does not exist until the dialup peer initiates traffic.
When enabled, auto-negotiate initiates the phase 2 SA negotiation automatically, repeating every five seconds until the SA is established.

The auto-negotiate feature is available only through the Command Line Interface (CLI). Use the following commands to enable it.

```bash
config vpn ipsec phase2
edit <phase2_name>
    set auto-negotiate enable
end
```

If the tunnel goes down, the auto-negotiate feature will attempt to re-establish it. However, the Autokey Keep Alive feature is a better method to ensure your VPN remains up.

**Autokey Keep Alive**

The phase 2 SA has a fixed duration. If there is traffic on the VPN as the SA nears expiry, a new SA is negotiated and the VPN switches to the new SA without interruption. If there is no traffic, the SA expires and the VPN tunnel goes down. A new SA will not be generated until there is traffic.

The Autokey Keep Alive option ensures that a new SA is negotiated even if there is no traffic so that the VPN tunnel stays up.

**DHCP-IPsec**

Select this option if the FortiGate unit assigns VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients through a DHCP server or relay. This option is available only if the Remote Gateway in the phase 1 configuration is set to Dialup User and it works only on policy-based VPNs.

With the DHCP-IPsec option, the FortiGate dialup server acts as a proxy for FortiClient dialup clients that have VIP addresses on the subnet of the private network behind the FortiGate unit. In this case, the FortiGate dialup server acts as a proxy on the local private network for the FortiClient dialup client. When a host on the network behind the dialup server issues an ARP request that corresponds to the device MAC address of the FortiClient host (when a remote server sends an ARP to the local FortiClient dialup client), the FortiGate unit answers the ARP request on behalf of the FortiClient host and forwards the associated traffic to the FortiClient host through the tunnel.

This feature prevents the VIP address assigned to the FortiClient dialup client from causing possible arp broadcast problems—the normal and VIP addresses can confuse some network switches by two addresses having the same MAC address.

**Quick mode selectors**

Quick Mode selectors determine which IP addresses can perform IKE negotiations to establish a tunnel. By only allowing authorized IP addresses access to the VPN tunnel, the network is more secure.

The default settings are as broad as possible: any IP address or configured address group, using any protocol, on any port. This enables configurations in which multiple subnets at each end of the tunnel can communicate, limited only by the security policies at each end.

When configuring Quick Mode selector **Source Address** and **Destination address**, valid options include IPv4 and IPv6 single addresses, IPv4 firewall address or group name, IPv4 range, IPv6 range, IPv4 subnet, or IPv6 subnet. For more information on IPv6 IPsec VPN, see “Overview of IPv6 IPsec support” on page 187.
Configure the phase 2 parameters

Follow this procedure to create an IPsec phase 2 definition.

Specifying the phase 2 parameters

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 2.
3. Include appropriate entries as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify the phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the phase 1 configuration that describes how remote peers or dialup clients will be authenticated on this tunnel, and how the connection to the remote peer or dialup client will be secured.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Advanced.
5. Include appropriate entries as follows:

| P2 Proposal | Select the encryption and authentication algorithms that will be used to change data into encrypted code. Add or delete encryption and authentication algorithms as required. Select a minimum of one and a maximum of three combinations. The remote peer must be configured to use at least one of the proposals that you define. It is invalid to set both Encryption and Authentication to null. |

If you are creating a hub-and-spoke configuration or an Internet-browsing configuration, you may have already started defining some of the required phase 2 parameters. If so, edit the existing definition to complete the configuration.
## Phase 2 parameters

Configure the phase 2 parameters.

### Encryption

You can select any of the following symmetric-key algorithms:

- **NULL** — Do not use an encryption algorithm.
- **DES** — Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.
- **3DES** — Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- **AES128** — A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- **AES192** — A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- **AES256** — A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.

### Authentication

You can select either of the following message digests to check the authenticity of messages during an encrypted session:

- **NULL** — Do not use a message digest.
- **MD5** — Message Digest 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- **SHA1** — Secure Hash Algorithm 1, which produces a 160-bit message digest.

To specify one combination only, set the *Encryption* and *Authentication* options of the second combination to NULL. To specify a third combination, use the *Add* button beside the fields for the second combination.

### Enable replay detection

Optionally enable or disable replay detection. Replay attacks occur when an unauthorized party intercepts a series of IPsec packets and replays them back into the tunnel.

### Enable perfect forward secrecy (PFS)

Enable or disable PFS. Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) improves security by forcing a new Diffie-Hellman exchange whenever keylife expires.

### DH Group

Select one Diffie-Hellman group (1, 2, 5, or 14). The remote peer or dialup client must be configured to use the same group.

### Keylife

Select the method for determining when the phase 2 key expires: *Seconds, KBytes, or Both*. If you select *Both*, the key expires when either the time has passed or the number of KB have been processed. The range is from 120 to 172800 seconds, or from 5120 to 2147483648 KB.

### Autokey Keep Alive

Enable the option if you want the tunnel to remain active when no data is being processed.

### DHCP-IPsec

Select *Enable* if the FortiGate unit acts as a dialup server and FortiGate DHCP server or relay will be used to assign VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients. The DHCP server or relay parameters must be configured separately.

If the FortiGate unit acts as a dialup server and the FortiClient dialup client VIP addresses match the network behind the dialup server, select *Enable* to cause the FortiGate unit to act as a proxy for the dialup clients.

This is available only for phase 2 configurations associated with a dialup phase 1 configuration. It works only on policy-based VPNs.
Configure the phase 2 parameters

### Quick Mode Selector

Optionally specify the source and destination IP addresses to be used as selectors for IKE negotiations. If the FortiGate unit is a dialup server, keep the default value 0.0.0.0/0 unless you need to circumvent problems caused by ambiguous IP addresses between one or more of the private networks making up the VPN. You can specify a single host IP address, an IP address range, or a network address. You may optionally specify source and destination port numbers and/or a protocol number.

If you are editing an existing phase 2 configuration, the Source address and Destination address fields are unavailable if the tunnel has been configured to use firewall addresses as selectors. This option exists only in the CLI. See the `dst-addr-type`, `dst-name`, `src-addr-type` and `src-name` keywords for the `vpn ipsec phase2` command in the FortiGate CLI Reference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source address</strong></td>
<td>If the FortiGate unit is a dialup server, type the source IP address that corresponds to the local sender(s) or network behind the local VPN peer (for example, 172.16.5.0/24 or 172.16.5.0/255.255.255.0 for a subnet, or 172.16.5.1/32 or 172.16.5.1/255.255.255.255 for a server or host, or 192.168.10.[80-100] or 192.168.10.80-192.168.10.100 for an address range). A value of 0.0.0.0/0 means all IP addresses behind the local VPN peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source port</strong></td>
<td>Type the port number that the local VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). The range is 0 to 65535. To specify all ports, type 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Destination address</strong></td>
<td>Type the destination IP address that corresponds to the recipient(s) or network behind the remote VPN peer (for example, 192.168.20.0/24 for a subnet, or 172.16.5.1/32 for a server or host, or 192.168.10.[80-100] for an address range). A value of 0.0.0.0/0 means all IP addresses behind the remote VPN peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Destination port</strong></td>
<td>Type the port number that the remote VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). The range is 0 to 65535. To specify all ports, type 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protocol</strong></td>
<td>Type the IP protocol number of the service. The range is 1 to 255. To specify all services, type 0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Select OK.
Defining VPN security policies

This section explains how to specify the source and destination IP addresses of traffic transmitted through an IPsec VPN, and how to define appropriate security policies. The following topics are included in this section:

- Defining policy addresses
- Defining VPN security policies

Defining policy addresses

A VPN tunnel has two end points. These end points may be VPN peers such as two FortiGate gateways. Encrypted packets are transmitted between the end points. At each end of the VPN tunnel, a VPN peer intercepts encrypted packets, decrypts the packets, and forwards the decrypted IP packets to the intended destination.

You need to define firewall addresses for the private networks behind each peer. You will use these addresses as the source or destination address depending on the security policy.

Figure 5: Example topology for the following policies

In general:

- In a gateway-to-gateway, hub-and-spoke, dynamic DNS, redundant-tunnel, or transparent configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of the network behind the remote VPN peer (for example, 192.168.10.0/255.255.255.0 or 192.168.10.0/24).
- In a peer-to-peer configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of a server or host behind the remote VPN peer (for example, 172.16.5.1/255.255.255.255 or 172.16.5.1/32 or 172.16.5.1).
For a FortiGate dialup server in a dialup-client or Internet-browsing configuration:

- If you are not using VIP addresses, or if the FortiGate dialup server assigns VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients through FortiGate DHCP relay, select the predefined destination address “all” in the security policy to refer to the dialup clients.
- If you assign VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients manually, you need to define a policy address for the VIP address assigned to the dialup client (for example, 10.254.254.1/32), or a subnet address from which the VIP addresses are assigned (for example, 10.254.254.0/24 or 10.254.254.0/255.255.255.0).
- For a FortiGate dialup client in a dialup-client or Internet-browsing configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of a host, server, or network behind the FortiGate dialup server.

To define a security IP address

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address and select Create New.
2. In the Address Name field, type a descriptive name that represents the network, server(s), or host(s).
3. In Type, select Subnet / IP Range.
4. In the Subnet/IP Range field, type the corresponding IP address and subnet mask.
   - For a subnet you could use the format 172.16.5.0/24 or its equivalent 172.16.5.0/255.255.255.0. For a server or host it would likely be 172.16.5.1/32. Alternately you can use an IP address range such as 192.168.10.[80-100] or 192.168.10.80-192.168.10.100.
5. Select OK.

Defining VPN security policies

Security policies allow IP traffic to pass between interfaces on a FortiGate unit. You can limit communication to particular traffic by specifying source address and destination addresses. Then only traffic from those addresses will be allowed.

Policy-based and route-based VPNs require different security policies.

- A policy-based VPN requires an IPsec security policy. You specify the interface to the private network, the interface to the remote peer and the VPN tunnel. A single policy can enable traffic inbound, outbound, or in both directions.
- A route-based VPN requires an Accept security policy for each direction. As source and destination interfaces, you specify the interface to the private network and the virtual IPsec interface (phase 1 configuration) of the VPN. The IPsec interface is the destination interface for the outbound policy and the source interface for the inbound policy. One security policy must be configured for each direction of each VPN interface.

There are examples of security policies for both policy-based and route-based VPNs throughout this guide. See “Route-based or policy-based VPN” on page 103.

If the security policy, which grants the VPN Connection is limited to certain services, DHCP must be included, otherwise the client won’t be able to retrieve a lease from the FortiGate’s (IPSec) DHCP server, because the DHCP Request (coming out of the tunnel) will be blocked.
Defining an IPsec security policy for a policy-based VPN

An IPsec security policy enables the transmission and reception of encrypted packets, specifies the permitted direction of VPN traffic, and selects the VPN tunnel. In most cases, a single policy is needed to control both inbound and outbound IP traffic through a VPN tunnel.

Allow outbound and allow inbound

In addition to these operations, security policies specify which IP addresses can initiate a tunnel. When the Allow outbound option is selected, traffic from the local private network initiates the tunnel. When the Allow inbound option is selected, traffic from a dialup client or computers on the remote network initiates the tunnel. Both can be enabled at the same time for bi-directional initiation of the tunnel.

Outbound and inbound NAT

When a FortiGate unit operates in NAT mode, you can also enable inbound or outbound NAT. Outbound NAT may be performed on outbound encrypted packets, or on IP packets before they are sent through the tunnel. Inbound NAT is performed on IP packets emerging from the tunnel. By default, these options are not selected in security policies.

- When used in conjunction with the natip CLI attribute (see the “config firewall” chapter of the FortiGate CLI Reference), outbound NAT enables you to change the source addresses of IP packets before they go into the tunnel. This feature is often used to resolve ambiguous routing when two or more of the private networks making up a VPN have the same or overlapping IP addresses.

When inbound NAT is enabled, inbound encrypted packets are intercepted and decrypted, and the source IP addresses of the decrypted packets are translated into the IP address of the FortiGate interface to the local private network before they are routed to the private network. If the computers on the local private network can communicate only with devices on the local private network (that is, the FortiGate interface to the private network is not the default gateway) and the remote client (or remote private network) does not have an IP address in the same network address space as the local private network, enable inbound NAT.

Source and destination addresses

Most security policies control outbound IP traffic. A VPN outbound policy usually has a source address originating on the private network behind the local FortiGate unit, and a destination address belonging to a dialup VPN client or a network behind the remote VPN peer. The source address that you choose for the security policy identifies from where outbound cleartext IP packets may originate, and also defines the local IP address or addresses that a remote server or client will be allowed to access through the VPN tunnel. The destination address that you choose identifies where IP packets must be forwarded after they are decrypted at the far end of the tunnel, and determines the IP address or addresses that the local network will be able to access at the far end of the tunnel.

Enabling other policy features

You can fine-tune a policy for services such as HTTP, FTP, and POP3; enable logging, traffic shaping, antivirus protection, web filtering, email filtering, file transfer, and email services throughout the VPN; and optionally allow connections according to a predefined schedule.
When a remote server or client attempts to connect to the private network behind a FortiGate gateway, the security policy intercepts the connection attempt and starts the VPN tunnel. The FortiGate unit uses the remote gateway specified in its phase 1 tunnel configuration to reply to the remote peer. When the remote peer receives a reply, it checks its own security policy, including the tunnel configuration, to determine which communications are permitted. As long as one or more services are allowed through the VPN tunnel, the two peers begin to negotiate the tunnel. To follow this negotiation in the web-based manager, go to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor. There you will find a list of the VPN tunnels, their status, and the data flow both incoming and outgoing.

Before you begin

Before you define the IPsec policy, you must:

- Define the IP source and destination addresses. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.
- Specify the phase 1 authentication parameters. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39.
- Specify the phase 2 parameters. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57.

To define an IPsec security policy

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy and select Create New.
2. Include the settings as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the local interface to the internal (private) network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the name that corresponds to the local network, server(s), or host(s) from which IP packets may originate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the local interface to the external (public) network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the name that corresponds to the remote network, server(s), or host(s) to which IP packets may be delivered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Keep the default setting (always) unless changes are needed to meet specific requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Keep the default setting (ANY) unless changes are needed to meet your specific requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 tunnel configuration to which this policy will apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Inbound</td>
<td>Select if traffic from the remote network will be allowed to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Outbound</td>
<td>Select if traffic from the local network will be allowed to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining VPN security policies

You may enable UTM features, and/or event logging, or select advanced settings to authenticate a user group, or shape traffic. For more information, see the **Firewall Guide**.

4 Select OK.

5 Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

## Defining multiple IPsec policies for the same tunnel

You must define at least one IPsec policy for each VPN tunnel. If the same remote server or client requires access to more than one network behind a local FortiGate unit, the FortiGate unit must be configured with an IPsec policy for each network. Multiple policies may be required to configure redundant connections to a remote destination or control access to different services at different times.

To ensure a secure connection, the FortiGate unit must evaluate IPSEC policies before ACCEPT and DENY security policies. Because the FortiGate unit reads policies starting at the top of the list, you must move all IPsec policies to the top of the list. When you define multiple IPsec policies for the same tunnel, you must reorder the IPsec policies that apply to the tunnel so that specific constraints can be evaluated before general constraints.

For example, if you create two equivalent IPsec policies for two different tunnels, it does not matter which one comes first in the list of IPsec policies—the system will select the correct policy based on the specified source and destination addresses. If you create two different IPsec policies for the same tunnel (that is, the two policies treat traffic differently depending on the nature of the connection request), you might have to reorder the IPsec policies to ensure that the system selects the correct IPsec policy. Reordering is especially important when the source and destination addresses in both policies are similar (for example, if one policy specifies a subset of the IP addresses in another policy). In this case, place the IPsec policy having the most specific constraints at the top of the list so that it can be evaluated first.
Defining security policies for a route-based VPN

When you define a route-based VPN, you create a virtual IPsec interface on the physical interface that connects to the remote peer. You create ordinary Accept security policies to enable traffic between the IPsec interface and the interface that connects to the private network. This makes configuration simpler than for policy-based VPNs, which require IPsec security policies.

To define security policies for a route-based VPN

1. Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between the local private network and the private network behind the remote peer. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the IPsec Interface you configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined for the private network behind the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. To permit the remote client to initiate communication, you need to define a security policy for communication in that direction. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the IPsec Interface you configured.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined for the private network behind the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gateway-to-gateway configurations

This section explains how to set up a basic gateway-to-gateway (site-to-site) IPsec VPN. The following topics are included in this section:

- Configuration overview
- General configuration steps
- Configuring the two VPN peers
- How to work with overlapping subnets
- Testing

Configuration overview

In a gateway-to-gateway configuration, two FortiGate units create a VPN tunnel between two separate private networks. All traffic between the two networks is encrypted and protected by FortiGate security policies.

Figure 6: Example gateway-to-gateway configuration

In some cases, computers on the private network behind one VPN peer may (by coincidence) have IP addresses that are already used by computers on the network behind the other VPN peer. In this type of situation (ambiguous routing), conflicts may occur in one or both of the FortiGate routing tables and traffic destined for the remote network through the tunnel may not be sent. To resolve issues related to ambiguous routing, see “How to work with overlapping subnets” on page 76.

In other cases, computers on the private network behind one VPN peer may obtain IP addresses from a local DHCP server. However, unless the local and remote networks use different private network address spaces, unintended ambiguous routing and/or IP-address overlap issues may arise. For a discussion of the related issues, see “FortiGate dialup-client configurations” on page 133.

You can set up a fully meshed or partially meshed configuration (see Figure 7 and Figure 8).
Figure 7: Fully meshed configuration

In a fully meshed network, all VPN peers are connected to each other, with one hop between peers. This topology is the most fault-tolerant: if one peer goes down, the rest of the network is not affected. This topology is difficult to scale because it requires connections between all peers. In addition, unnecessary communication can occur between peers. Best practices dictates a hub-and-spoke configuration instead (see “Hub-and-spoke configurations” on page 85).

Figure 8: Partially meshed configuration

A partially meshed network is similar to a fully meshed network, but instead of having tunnels between all peers, tunnels are only configured between peers that communicate with each other regularly.
General configuration steps

The FortiGate units at both ends of the tunnel must be operating in NAT mode and have static public IP addresses.

When a FortiGate unit receives a connection request from a remote VPN peer, it uses IPsec phase 1 parameters to establish a secure connection and authenticate that VPN peer. Then, if the security policy permits the connection, the FortiGate unit establishes the tunnel using IPsec phase 2 parameters and applies the IPsec security policy. Key management, authentication, and security services are negotiated dynamically through the IKE protocol.

To support these functions, the following general configuration steps must be performed by both FortiGate units:

- Define the phase 1 parameters that the FortiGate unit needs to authenticate the remote peer and establish a secure connection.
- Define the phase 2 parameters that the FortiGate unit needs to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer.
- Create security policies to control the permitted services and permitted direction of traffic between the IP source and destination addresses.

Configuring the two VPN peers

Configure the VPN peers as follows. Each step is required, but these are general steps. For more detailed information on each step follow the cross references. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39.

All steps are required. Cross references point to required information that is repeated. No steps are optional.

Configuring Phase 1 and Phase 2 for both peers

This procedure applies to both peers. Repeat the procedure on each FortiGate unit, using the correct IP address for each. You may wish to vary the Phase 1 names but this is optional. Otherwise all steps are the same for each peer.

The phase 1 configuration defines the parameters that FortiGate_1 will use to authenticate FortiGate_2 and establish a secure connection. For the purposes of this example, a preshared key will be used to authenticate FortiGate_2. The same preshared key must be specified at both FortiGate units.

Before you define the phase 1 parameters, you need to:

- Reserve a name for the remote gateway.
- Obtain the IP address of the public interface to the remote peer.
- Reserve a unique value for the preshared key.

The key must contain at least 6 printable characters and best practices dictate that it only be known by network administrators. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key must have a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters.

At the local FortiGate unit, define the phase 1 configuration needed to establish a secure connection with the remote peer. See “Phase 1 configuration” on page 26.
To create phase 1 to establish a secure connection with the remote peer

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 1.
3. Enter the following information, and select OK.

| Name | Enter peer_1.  
A name to identify the VPN tunnel. This name appears in phase 2 configurations, security policies and the VPN monitor. |
| Remote Gateway | Select Static IP Address. |
| IP Address | Enter 172.20.0.2 when configuring FortiGate_1.  
Enter 172.18.0.2 when configuring FortiGate_2.  
The IP address of the remote peer public interface. |
| Local Interface | Select wan1.  
The FortiGate unit’s public interface.  
This interface cannot be a loopback interface. |
| Enable IPsec Interface Mode | Select Advanced to see this setting.  
Enable IPsec Interface Mode to have the FortiGate unit create a virtual IPsec interface for a route-based VPN.  
Disable this option to create a policy-based VPN. For more information, see “Comparing policy-based or route-based VPNs” on page 22.  
After you select OK to create the phase 1 configuration, you cannot change this setting. |

The basic phase 2 settings associate IPsec phase 2 parameters with the phase 1 configuration and specify the remote end point of the VPN tunnel. Before you define the phase 2 parameters, you need to reserve a name for the tunnel. See “Phase 2 configuration” on page 31.

To configure phase 2 settings

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 2.
3. Enter the following information, and select OK.

| Name | Enter peer_1_p2.  
A name to identify this phase 2 configuration. |
| Phase 1 | Select peer_1.  
The name of the phase 1 configuration. |

Creating security policies

Security policies control all IP traffic passing between a source address and a destination address.
An IPsec security policy is needed to allow the transmission of encrypted packets, specify the permitted direction of VPN traffic, and select the VPN tunnel that will be subject to the policy. A single policy is needed to control both inbound and outbound IP traffic through a VPN tunnel.

Before you define security policies, you must first specify the IP source and destination addresses. In a gateway-to-gateway configuration:

- The IP source address corresponds to the private network behind the local FortiGate unit.
- The IP destination address refers to the private network behind the remote VPN peer.

When you are creating security policies, choose one of either route-based or policy-based methods and follow it for both VPN peers. DO NOT configure both route-based and policy-based policies on the same FortiGate unit for the same VPN tunnel.

The configuration of FortiGate_2 is similar to that of FortiGate_1. You must:

- Define the phase 1 parameters that FortiGate_2 needs to authenticate FortiGate_1 and establish a secure connection.
- Define the phase 2 parameters that FortiGate_2 needs to create a VPN tunnel with FortiGate_1.
- Create the security policy and define the scope of permitted services between the IP source and destination addresses.

When creating security policies it is good practice to include a comment describing what the policy does.

When creating security policies you need to be:

- Creating firewall addresses
- Creating route-based VPN security policies
- Configuring a default route for VPN interface

or

- Creating firewall addresses
- Creating policy-based VPN security policy

**Creating firewall addresses**

Define names for the addresses or address ranges of the private networks that the VPN links. These addresses are used in the security policies that permit communication between the networks.

**To define the IP address of the network behind FortiGate_1**

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter Finance_network</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A meaningful address name that describes the network behind FortiGate_1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The IP address of the private network behind FortiGate_1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To specify the address of the network behind FortiGate_2

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter HR_network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the private network behind FortiGate_2 (for example, 10.31.101.0/24).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating route-based VPN security policies

Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses.

To create route-based VPN security policies

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New.
3. Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select internal. The interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select Finance_network when configuring FortiGate_1. Select HR_network when configuring FortiGate_2. The address name that for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select peer_1. The VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface) you configured earlier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select HR_network when configuring FortiGate_1. Select Finance_network when configuring FortiGate_2. The address name that you defined for the private network behind the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Allow Internal to remote VPN network traffic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Configure any additional features such as UTM or traffic shaping you may want. (optional).
5. Select Create New to create another policy for the other direction.
6. Enter the following information, and select OK.
Configure any additional features such as UTM or traffic shaping you may want. (optional).

### Configuring a default route for VPN interface

All network traffic must have a static route to direct its traffic to the proper destination. Without a route, traffic will not flow even if the security policies are configured properly.

You may need to create a static route entry for both directions of VPN traffic if your security policies allow bi-directional tunnel initiation.

**To configure the route for a route-based VPN**

1. On FortiGate_2, go to Router > Static > Static Route.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP / Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>FGT2_to_FGT1_Tunnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>Leave as default: 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Leave this at its default. If there are other routes on this FortiGate unit, you may need to set the distance on this route so the VPN traffic will use it as the default route. However, this normally happens by default because this route is typically a better match than the generic default route.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating policy-based VPN security policy

Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses.

| Source Interface/Zone | Select internal.  
The interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit. |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Source Address Name  | Select Finance_network when configuring FortiGate_1.  
Select HR_network when configuring FortiGate_2.  
The address name defined for the private network behind this FortiGate unit. |
| Destination Interface/Zone | Select wan1.  
The FortiGate unit’s public interface. |
| Destination Address Name | Select HR_network when configuring FortiGate_1.  
Select Finance_network when configuring FortiGate_2.  
The address name that you defined in Step for the private network behind the remote peer. |
| Action | Select IPSEC. |
| VPN Tunnel | Select peer_1.  
The name of the phase 1 configuration that you created earlier.  
Select Allow inbound to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel.  
Select Allow outbound to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel. |
| Comment | Bidirectional policy-based VPN policy |

Place VPN policies in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

How to work with overlapping subnets

A site-to-site VPN configuration sometimes has the problem that the private subnet addresses at each end are the same. You can resolve this problem by remapping the private addresses using virtual IP addresses (VIP).

VIPs allow computers on those overlapping private subnets to each have another set of IP addresses that can be used without confusion. The FortiGate unit maps the VIP addresses to the original addresses. This means if PC1 starts a session with PC2 at 10.31.101.10, FortiGate_2 directs that session to 10.11.101.10 — the actual IP address of PC2. Figure 9 shows this — Finance network VIP is 10.21.101.0/24 and the HR network is 10.31.101.0/24.
Solution for route-based VPN

You need to:

- Configure IPsec Phase 1 and Phase 2 as you usually would for a route-based VPN. In this example, the resulting IPsec interface is named FGT1_to_FGT2.
- Configure virtual IP (VIP) mapping:
  - the 10.21.101.0/24 network mapped to the 10.11.101.0/24 network on FortiGate_1
  - the 10.31.101.0/24 network mapped to the 10.11.101.0/24 network on FortiGate_2
- Configure an outgoing security policy with ordinary source NAT on both FortiGates.
- Configure an incoming security policy with the VIP as the destination on both FortiGates.
- Configure a route to the remote private network over the IPsec interface on both FortiGates.

To configure VIP mapping on both FortiGates

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Virtual IP > Virtual IP.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name, for example, my_vip.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External Interface</td>
<td>Select FGT1_to_FGT2. The IPsec interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Static NAT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| External IP Address/Range | For the external IP address field enter:
  - 10.21.101.1 when configuring FortiGate_1, or
  - 10.31.101.1 when configuring FortiGate_2. |
To configure the outbound security policy on both FortiGates
Repeat this procedure on both FortiGate_1 and FortiGate_2.
1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New.
3. Enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select Port 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select FGT1_to_FGT2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The IPsec interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure the inbound security policy on both FortiGates
Repeat this procedure on both FortiGate_1 and FortiGate_2.
1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select FGT1_to_FGT2.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select Port 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select my-vip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To configure the static route for both FortiGates

Repeat this procedure on both FortiGate_1 and FortiGate_2.

1. Go to *Router > Static > Static Route*.
2. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and then select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP / Mask</th>
<th>Enter 10.31.101.0/24 when configuring FortiGate_1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter 10.21.101.0/24 when configuring FortiGate_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Select FGT1_to_FGT2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>Leave as default: 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Leave at default. If you have advanced routing on your network, you may have to change this value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you do not add a static route for the VPN tunnel, no traffic will be sent or received.

### Solution for policy-based VPN

As with the route-based solution, users contact hosts at the other end of the VPN using an alternate subnet address. PC1 communicates with PC2 using IP address 10.31.101.10, and PC2 communicates with PC1 using IP address 10.21.101.10.

In this solution however, outbound NAT is used to translate the source address of packets from the 10.11.101.0/24 network to the alternate subnet address that hosts at the other end of the VPN use to reply. Inbound packets from the remote end have their destination addresses translated back to the 10.11.101.0/24 network.

For example, PC1 uses the destination address 10.31.101.10 to contact PC2. Outbound NAT on FortiGate_1 translates the PC1 source address to 10.21.101.10. At the FortiGate_2 end of the tunnel, the outbound NAT configuration translates the destination address to the actual PC2 address of 10.11.101.10. Similarly, PC2 replies to PC1 using destination address 10.21.101.10, with the PC2 source address translated to 10.31.101.10. PC1 and PC2 can communicate over the VPN even though they both have the same IP address.

You need to:

- Configure IPsec Phase 1 as you usually would for a policy-based VPN.
- Configure IPsec Phase 2 with the `use-natip disable` CLI option.
- Define a firewall address for the local private network, 10.11.101.0/24.
- Define a firewall address for the remote private network:
  - define a firewall address for 10.31.101.0/24 on FortiGate_1
  - define a firewall address for 10.21.101.0/24 on FortiGate_2
- Configure an outgoing IPsec security policy with outbound NAT to map 10.11.101.0/24 source addresses:
  - to the 10.21.101.0/24 network on FortiGate_1
  - to the 10.31.101.0/24 network on FortiGate_2
To configure IPsec Phase 2 - CLI

```sh
config vpn ipsec phase2
edit "FGT1_FGT2_p2"
   set keepalive enable
   set pfs enable
   set phasename FGT1_to_FGT2
   set proposal 3des-sha1 3des-md5
   set replay enable
   set use-natip disable
end
```

In this example, your phase 1 definition is named FGT1_to_FGT2. `use-natip` is set to `disable`, so you can specify the source selector using the `src-addr-type`, `src-start-ip`/`src-end-ip` or `src-subnet` keywords. This example leaves these keywords at their default values, which specify the subnet `0.0.0.0/0`.

The `pfs` keyword ensures that perfect forward secrecy (PFS) is used. This ensures that each Phase 2 key created is unrelated to any other keys in use.

To define the local private network firewall address
1. Go to `Firewall Objects > Address > Address`.
2. Select `Create New` and enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter <code>vpn-local</code>. A meaningful name for the local private network</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Subnet / IP Range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet / IP Range</td>
<td><code>10.11.101.0 255.255.255.0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define the remote private network firewall address
1. Go to `Firewall Objects > Address > Address`.
2. Select `Create New`.
3. Enter the following information, and select `OK`:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter <code>vpn-remote</code>. A meaningful name for the remote private network</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Subnet / IP Range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet / IP Range</td>
<td><code>10.31.101.0 255.255.255.0</code> on FortiGate_1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>10.21.101.0 255.255.255.0</code> on FortiGate_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To configure the IPsec security policy
In the CLI on FortiGate_1, enter the commands:

```bash
config firewall policy
edit 1
    set srcintf "port1"
    set dstintf "port2"
    set srcaddr "vpn-local"
    set dstaddr "vpn-remote"
    set action ipsec
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
    set inbound enable
    set outbound enable
    set vpntunnel "FGT1_to_FGT2"
    set natoutbound enable
    set natip 10.31.101.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

Optionally, you can set everything except `natip` in the web-based manager and then use the CLI to set `natip`.

Enter the same commands on FortiGate_2, but set `natip` be `10.21.101.0 255.255.255.0`.

Testing

The best testing is to look at the packets both as the VPN tunnel is negotiated, and when the tunnel is up.

To determine what the other end of the VPN tunnel is proposing

1. Start a terminal program such as puTTY and set it to log all output.
   When necessary refer to the logs to locate information when output is verbose.
2. Logon to the FortiGate unit using a super_admin account.
3. Enter the following CLI commands.
4. Display all the possible IKE error types and the number of times they have occurred:
   ```bash
diag vpn ike errors
   ```
5. Check for existing debug sessions:
   ```bash
diag debug info
   ```
   If a debug session is running, to halt it enter:
   ```bash
diag debug disable
   ```
6. Confirm your proposal settings:
   ```bash
diag vpn ike config list
   ```
7. If your proposal settings do not match what you expect, make a change to it and save it to force an update in memory. If that fixes the problem, stop here.
8. List the current vpn filter:
   ```bash
diag vpn ike filter
   ```
9 If all fields are set to any, there are no filters set and all VPN ike packets will be
displayed in the debug output. If your system has only a few VPNs, skip setting the
filter.

If your system has many VPN connections this will result in very verbose output and
make it very difficult to locate the correct connection attempt.

10 Set the VPN filter to display only information from the destination IP address for
example 10.10.10.10:
   \texttt{diag vpn ike log-filter dst-addr4 10.10.10.10}

To add more filter options, enter them one per line as above. Other filter options are
displayed in Table 4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4: Filter options for diag vpn ike filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dst-addr6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dst-port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>src-addr4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>src-addr6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>src-port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11 Start debugging:
   \texttt{diag debug app ike 255}
   \texttt{diag debug enable}

12 Have the remote end attempt a VPN connection.

13 If possible go to the web-based manager on your FortiGate unit, go to the VPN
monitor and try to bring the tunnel up.

14 Stop the debug output:
   \texttt{diag debug disable}

15 Go back through the output to determine what proposal information the initiator is
using, and how it is different from your VPN P1 proposal settings.

Things to look for in the debug output of attempted VPN connections are shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 5: Important terms to look for in VPN debug output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>initiator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the remote end attempts the connection they become the initiator. This situation makes
it easier to debug VPN tunnels because then you have the remote information and all of
your local information. by initiate the connection, you will not see the other end’s
information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>local ID</td>
<td>In aggressive mode, this is not encrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error no SA proposal chosen</td>
<td>There was no proposal match — there was no encryption-authentication pair in common, usually occurs after a long list of proposal attempts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R U THERE and R U THERE ack</td>
<td>dead peer detection (dpd), also known as dead gateway detection — after three failed attempts to contact the remote end it will be declared dead, no farther attempts will be made to contact it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negotiation result</td>
<td>lists the proposal settings that were agreed on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA_life_soft and SA_life_hard</td>
<td>negotiating a new key, and the key life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R U THERE</td>
<td>If you see this, it means Phase 1 was successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tunnel up</td>
<td>the negotiation was successful, the VPN tunnel is operational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hub-and-spoke configurations

This section describes how to set up hub-and-spoke IPsec VPNs. The following topics are included in this section:

- Configuration overview
- Configure the hub
- Configure the spokes
- Dynamic spokes configuration example

Configuration overview

In a hub-and-spoke configuration, VPN connections radiate from a central FortiGate unit (the hub) to a number of remote peers (the spokes). Traffic can pass between private networks behind the hub and private networks behind the remote peers. Traffic can also pass between remote peer private networks through the hub.

Figure 10: Example hub-and-spoke configuration

The actual implementation varies in complexity depending on:
- whether the spokes are statically or dynamically addressed
- the addressing scheme of the protected subnets
- how peers are authenticated
This guide discusses the issues involved in configuring a hub-and-spoke VPN and provides some basic configuration examples.

**Hub-and-spoke infrastructure requirements**

- The FortiGate hub must be operating in NAT mode and have a static public IP address.
- Spokes may have static IP addresses, dynamic IP addresses (see “FortiGate dialup-client configurations” on page 133), or static domain names and dynamic IP addresses (see “Dynamic DNS configuration” on page 101).

**Spoke gateway addressing**

The public IP address of the spoke is the VPN remote gateway as seen from the hub. Statically addressed spokes each require a separate VPN phase 1 configuration on the hub. When there are many spokes, this becomes rather cumbersome.

Using dynamic addressing for spokes simplifies the VPN configuration because then the hub requires only a single phase 1 configuration with “dialup user” as the remote gateway. You can use this configuration even if the remote peers have static IP addresses. A remote peer can establish a VPN connection regardless of its IP address if its traffic selectors match and it can authenticate to the hub. See “Dynamic spokes configuration example” on page 95 for an example of this configuration.

**Protected networks addressing**

The addresses of the protected networks are needed to configure destination selectors and sometimes for security policies and static routes. The larger the number of spokes, the more addresses there are to manage. You can

- assign spoke subnets as part of a larger subnet, usually on a new network
- or
- create address groups that contain all of the needed addresses

**Using aggregated subnets**

If you are creating a new network, where subnet IP addresses are not already assigned, you can simplify the VPN configuration by assigning spoke subnets that are part of a large subnet.

**Figure 11: Aggregated subnets**

![Aggregated subnets diagram]

All spokes use the large subnet address, 10.1.0.0/16 for example, as

- the IPSec destination selector
- the destination of the security policy from the private subnet to the VPN (required for policy-based VPN, optional for route-based VPN)
- the destination of the static route to the VPN (route-based)
Each spoke uses the address of its own protected subnet as the IPsec source selector and as the source address in its VPN security policy. The remote gateway is the public IP address of the hub FortiGate unit.

**Using an address group**

If you want to create a hub-and-spoke VPN between existing private networks, the subnet addressing usually does not fit the aggregated subnet model discussed earlier. All of the spokes and the hub will need to include the addresses of all the protected networks in their configuration.

On FortiGate units, you can define a named firewall address for each of the remote protected networks and add these addresses to a firewall address group. For a policy-based VPN, you can then use this address group as the destination of the VPN security policy.

For a route-based VPN, the destination of the VPN security policy can be set to All. You need to specify appropriate routes for each of the remote subnets.

**Authentication**

Authentication is by a common preshared key or by certificates. For simplicity, the examples in this chapter assume that all spokes use the same preshared key.

**Configure the hub**

At the FortiGate unit that acts as the hub, you need to

- configure the VPN to each spoke
- configure communication between spokes

You configure communication between spokes differently for a policy-based VPN than for a route-based VPN. For a policy-based VPN, you configure a VPN concentrator. For a route-based VPN, you must either define security policies or group the IPsec interfaces into a zone

**Define the hub-spoke VPNs**

Perform these steps at the FortiGate unit that will act as the hub. Although this procedure assumes that the spokes are all FortiGate units, a spoke could also be VPN client software, such as FortiClient Endpoint Security.
Configure the hub

To configure the VPN hub

1 At the hub, define the phase 1 configuration for each spoke. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify the VPN in phase 2 configurations, security policies and the VPN monitor.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The remote gateway is the other end of the VPN tunnel. There are three options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Static IP Address</strong> — Enter the spoke’s public IP Address. You will need to create a phase 1 configuration for each spoke. Either the hub or the spoke can establish the VPN connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Dialup User</strong> — No additional information is needed. The hub accepts connections from peers with appropriate encryption and authentication settings. Only one phase 1 configuration is needed for multiple dialup spokes. Only the spoke can establish the VPN tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Dynamic DNS</strong> — If the spoke subscribes to a dynamic DNS service, enter the spoke’s Dynamic DNS domain name. Either the hub or the spoke can establish the VPN connection. For more information, see “Dynamic DNS configuration” on page 101.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Local Interface</strong> Select the FortiGate interface that connects to the remote gateway. This is usually the FortiGate unit’s public interface. This interface cannot be a loopback interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</strong> You must select Advanced to see this setting. If IPsec Interface Mode is enabled, the FortiGate unit creates a virtual IPsec interface for a route-based VPN. Disable this option if you want to create a policy-based VPN. For more information, see “Comparing policy-based or route-based VPNs” on page 22. After you select OK to create the phase 1 configuration, you cannot change this setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with each spoke. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify this spoke phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined for this spoke.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Define the hub-spoke security policies

1 Define a name for the address of the private network behind the hub. For more information, see “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.

2 Define names for the addresses or address ranges of the private networks behind the spokes. For more information, see “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.

3 Define the VPN concentrator. See “To define the VPN concentrator” on page 90.
Define security policies to permit communication between the hub and the spokes. For more information, see "Defining VPN security policies" on page 64.

Route-based VPN security policies

Define ACCEPT security policies to permit communications between the hub and the spoke. You need one policy for each direction. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface) you configured in Step 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name you defined in Step 2 for the private network behind the spoke FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the hub’s interface to the internal (private) network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the source address that you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Enable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Policy-based VPN security policy

Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications between the hub and the spoke. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the hub’s interface to the internal (private) network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the source address that you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the hub’s public network interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name you defined in Step 2 for the private network behind the spoke FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>IPSEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you created for the spoke in Step 1. Select Allow inbound to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel. Select Allow outbound to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 In the policy list, arrange the policies in the following order:
   - IPsec policies that control traffic between the hub and the spokes first
   - the default security policy last

**Configuring communication between spokes (policy-based VPN)**

For a policy-based hub-and-spoke VPN, you define a concentrator to enable communication between the spokes.

**To define the VPN concentrator**

1. At the hub, go to **VPN > IPSEC > Concentrator** and select **Create New**.
2. In the **Concentrator Name** field, type a name to identify the concentrator.
3. From the **Available Tunnels** list, select a VPN tunnel and then select the right-pointing arrow.
4. Repeat Step 3 until all of the tunnels associated with the spokes are included in the concentrator.
5. Select **OK**.

**Configuring communication between spokes (route-based VPN)**

For a route-based hub-and-spoke VPN, there are several ways you can enable communication between the spokes:

- put all of the IPsec interfaces into a zone and enable intra-zone traffic. This eliminates the need for any security policy for the VPN, but you cannot apply UTM features to scan the traffic for security threats.
- put all of the IPsec interfaces into a zone and create a single zone-to-zone security policy
- create a security policy for each pair of spokes that are allowed to communicate with each other. The number of policies required increases rapidly as the number of spokes increases.

**Using a zone as a concentrator**

A simple way to provide communication among all of the spokes is to create a zone and allow intra-zone communication. You cannot apply UTM features using this method.

1. Go to **System > Network > Interface**.
2. Select the down-arrow on the **Create New** button and select **Zone**.
3. In the **Zone Name** field, enter a name, such as **Our_VPN_zone**.
4. Clear **Block intra-zone traffic**.
5. In the **Interface Members** list, select the IPsec interfaces that are part of your VPN.
6. Select **OK**.
Using a zone with a policy as a concentrator

If you put all of the hub IPsec interfaces involved in the VPN into a zone, you can enable communication among all of the spokes and apply UTM features with just one security policy.

To create a zone for the VPN

1. Go to System > Network > Interface.
2. Select the down-arrow on the Create New button and select Zone.
3. In the Zone Name field, enter a name, such as Our_VPN_zone.
4. Select Block intra-zone traffic.
5. In the Interface Members list, select the IPsec interfaces that are part of your VPN.
6. Select OK.

To create a security policy for the zone

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy. Select Create New and enter the settings:
   - Source Interface/Zone: Select the zone you created for your VPN.
   - Source Address Name: Select All.
   - Destination Interface/Zone: Select the zone you created for your VPN.
   - Destination Address Name: Select All.
   - Action: Select ACCEPT.
   - NAT: Enable.
   - UTM: If you want to apply UTM features to this traffic, select the appropriate profiles.
2. Select OK.

Using security policies as a concentrator

To enable communication between two spokes, you need to define an ACCEPT security policy for them. To allow either spoke to initiate communication, you must create a policy for each direction. This procedure describes a security policy for communication from Spoke 1 to Spoke 2. Others are similar.

1. Define names for the addresses or address ranges of the private networks behind each spoke. For more information, see “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.
2. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy. Select Create New and enter the settings:
   - Source Interface/Zone: Select the IPsec interface that connects to Spoke 1.
   - Source Address Name: Select the address of the private network behind Spoke 1.
   - Destination Interface/Zone: Select the IPsec interface that connects to Spoke 2.
   - Destination Address Name: Select the address of the private network behind Spoke 2.
   - Action: Select ACCEPT.
Configure the spokes

Although this procedure assumes that the spokes are all FortiGate units, a spoke could also be VPN client software, such as FortiClient Endpoint Security.

Perform these steps at each FortiGate unit that will act as a spoke.

To create the phase 1 and phase 2 configurations

1. At the spoke, define the phase 1 parameters that the spoke will use to establish a secure connection with the hub. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Enter these settings:

   - **Remote Gateway**: Select *Static IP Address*.
   - **IP Address**: Type the IP address of the interface that connects to the hub.
   - **Enable IPsec Interface Mode**: Enable if you are creating a route-based VPN. Clear if you are creating a policy-based VPN.

2. Create the phase 2 tunnel definition. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Select the set of phase 1 parameters that you defined for the hub. You can select the name of the hub from the *Static IP Address* part of the list.

**Configuring security policies for hub-to-spoke communication**

1. Create an address for this spoke. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63. Enter the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the spoke.

2. Create an address to represent the hub. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63. Enter the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the hub.

3. Define the security policy to enable communication with the hub.
   
   **Route-based VPN security policy**
   
   Define two security policies to permit communications to and from the hub. Enter these settings:

   - **Source Interface/Zone**: Select the virtual IPsec interface you created.
   - **Source Address Name**: Select the hub address you defined in Step 1.
   - **Destination Interface/Zone**: Select the spoke’s interface to the internal (private) network.
   - **Destination Address Name**: Select the spoke addresses you defined in Step 2.
   - **Action**: Select *ACCEPT*
   - **NAT**: Enable

3. Select OK.
Hub-and-spoke configurations

Configure the spokes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the spoke’s interface to the internal (private) network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the spoke address you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface you created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the hub destination addresses you defined in Step 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Policy-based VPN security policy**

Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications with the hub. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the spoke’s interface to the internal (private) network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the spoke address you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the spoke’s interface to the external (public) network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the hub address you defined in Step 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration you defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Allow inbound to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Allow outbound to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring security policies for spoke-to-spoke communication**

Each spoke requires security policies to enable communication with the other spokes. Instead of creating separate security policies for each spoke, you can create an address group that contains the addresses of the networks behind the other spokes. The security policy then applies to all of the spokes in the group.

1. Define destination addresses to represent the networks behind each of the other spokes. Add these addresses to an address group. For more information, see “Configuring Address Groups” section in the “Firewall Address” chapter of the FortiGate Administration Guide.
2. Define the security policy to enable communication between this spoke and the spokes in the address group you created.

### Policy-based VPN security policy

Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications with the other spokes. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64. Enter these settings in particular:

### Route-based VPN security policy

Define two security policies to permit communications to and from the other spokes. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the virtual IPsec interface you created.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the spoke address group you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the spoke’s interface to the internal (private) network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select this spoke’s address name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the spoke’s interface to the internal (private) network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select this spoke’s address name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface you created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the spoke address group you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Policy-based VPN security policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select this spoke’s internal (private) network interface.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select this spoke’s source address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the spoke’s interface to the external (public) network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the spoke address group you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VPN Tunnel

Select the name of the phase 1 configuration you defined. Select *Allow inbound* to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel. Select *Allow outbound* to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel.
1. Place this policy or policies in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

Dynamic spokes configuration example

This example demonstrates how to set up a basic route-based hub-and-spoke IPsec VPN that uses preshared keys to authenticate VPN peers.

Figure 12: Example hub-and-spoke configuration

In the example configuration, the protected networks 10.1.0.0/24, 10.1.1.0/24 and 10.1.2.0/24 are all part of the larger subnet 10.1.0.0/16. The steps for setting up the example hub-and-spoke configuration create a VPN among Site 1, Site 2, and the HR Network.

The spokes are dialup. Their addresses are not part of the configuration on the hub, so only one spoke definition is required no matter the number of spokes. For simplicity, only two spokes are shown.

Configure the hub (FortiGate_1)

The phase 1 configuration defines the parameters that FortiGate_1 will use to authenticate spokes and establish secure connections.

For the purposes of this example, one preshared key will be used to authenticate all of the spokes. Each key must contain at least 6 printable characters and best practices dictate that it only be known by network administrators. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, each key must consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters.
Define the IPsec configuration

To define the phase 1 parameters

1. At FortiGate_1, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Define the phase 1 parameters that the hub will use to establish a secure connection to the spokes. Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type a name (for example, toSpokes).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Dialup user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>External</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The basic phase 2 settings associate IPsec phase 2 parameters with the phase 1 configuration and specify the remote end points of the VPN tunnels.

To define the phase 2 parameters

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Create a phase 2 tunnel definition for the spokes. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name for the phase 2 definition (for example, toSpokes_ph2).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the Phase 1 configuration that you defined previously (for example, toSpokes).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Define the security policies

security policies control all IP traffic passing between a source address and a destination address. For a route-based VPN, the policies are simpler than for a policy-based VPN. Instead of an IPSEC policy, you use an ACCEPT policy with the virtual IPsec interface as the external interface.

Before you define security policies, you must first define firewall addresses to use in those policies. You need addresses for:
- the HR network behind FortiGate_1
- the aggregate subnet address for the protected networks

To define the IP address of the HR network behind FortiGate_1

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter an address name (for example, HR_Network).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the HR network behind FortiGate_1 (for example, 10.1.0.0/24).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To specify the IP address the aggregate protected subnet

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter an address name (for example, Spoke_net).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the aggregate protected network, 10.1.0.0/16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define the security policy for traffic from the hub to the spokes

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface to the HR network, port 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Address Name</td>
<td>HR_Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface that connects to the spokes, toSpokes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Name</td>
<td>Spoke_net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

Configure communication between spokes

Spokes communicate with each other through the hub. You need to configure the hub to allow this communication. An easy way to do this is to create a zone containing the virtual IPsec interfaces even if there is only one, and create a zone-to-zone security policy.

To create a zone for the VPN

1. Go to System > Network > Interface.
2. Select the down-arrow on the Create New button and select Zone.
3. In the Zone Name field, enter a name, such as Our_VPN_zone.
4. Select Block intra-zone traffic.
   
   You could enable intra-zone traffic and then you would not need to create a security policy. But, you would not be able to apply UTM features.

5. In Interface Members, select the virtual IPsec interface, toSpokes.
6. Select OK.

To create a security policy for the zone

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy. Select Create New and enter these settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select Our_VPN_zone.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select Our_VPN_zone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure the spokes

In this example, all spokes have nearly identical configuration, requiring the following:

- phase 1 authentication parameters to initiate a connection with the hub
- phase 2 tunnel creation parameters to establish a VPN tunnel with the hub
- a source address that represents the network behind the spoke. This is the only part of the configuration that is different for each spoke.
- a destination address that represents the aggregate protected network
- a security policy to enable communications between the spoke and the aggregate protected network

Define the IPsec configuration

At each spoke, create the following configuration.

To define the Phase 1 parameters

1. At the spoke, go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type a name, for example, toHub.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>172.16.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Port2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key. The value must be identical to the preshared key that you specified previously in the FortiGate_1 configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Select Advanced to see this option. Enable the option to create a route-based VPN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define the Phase 2 parameters

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name for the tunnel, for example, toHub_ph2.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined previously, for example, toHub.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select to show the following Quick Mode Selector settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define the security policies

You need to define firewall addresses for the spokes and the aggregate protected network and then create a security policy to enable communication between them.

To define the IP address of the network behind the spoke
1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Enter the address of the protected network at this spoke.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For spoke_1, this is 10.1.1.0/24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For spoke_2, this is 10.1.2.0/24.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Destination | Enter the aggregate protected subnet address, 10.1.0.0/16. |

To specify the IP address of the aggregate protected network
1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter an address name, for example LocalNet.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the private network behind the spoke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For spoke_1, this is 10.1.1.0/24.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For spoke_2, this is 10.1.2.0/24.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Address Name | Enter the IP address of the aggregate protected network, 10.1.0.0/16. |

To define the security policy
1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

3. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:
### Dynamic spokes configuration example

#### Hub-and-spoke configurations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface to the internal private network, <code>port1</code>.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address for this spoke’s protected network, <code>LocalNet</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface, <code>toHub</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Name</td>
<td>Select the aggregate protected network address, <code>Spoke_net</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Place these policies in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.
Dynamic DNS configuration

This section describes how to configure a site-to-site VPN, in which one FortiGate unit has a static IP address and the other FortiGate unit has a domain name and a dynamic IP address.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Dynamic DNS over VPN concepts
- Dynamic DNS topology
- General configuration steps
- Configure the dynamically-addressed VPN peer
- Configure the fixed-address VPN peer
- Testing

Dynamic DNS over VPN concepts

A typical computer has a static IP address and one or more DNS servers to resolve fully qualified domain names (FQDN) into IP addresses. A domain name assigned to this computer is resolved by any DNS server having an entry for the domain name and its static IP address. The IP address never changes or changes only rarely so the DNS server can reliably say it has the correct address for that domain all the time.

Dynamic DNS (DDNS)

It is different when a computer has a dynamic IP address, such as an IP address assigned dynamically by a DHCP server, and a domain name. Computers that want to contact this computer do not know what its current IP address is. To solve this problem there are dynamic DNS servers. These are public servers that store a DNS entry for your computer that includes its current IP address and associated domain name. These entries are kept up to date by your computer sending its current IP address to the dynamic DNS (DDNS) server to ensure its entry is always up to date. When other computers want to contact your domain, their DNS gets your IP address from your DDNS server. To use DDNS servers, you must subscribe to them and usually pay for their services.

When configuring DDNS on your FortiGate unit, go to System > Network > DNS and enable Use DDNS. Then select the interface with the dynamic connection, which DDNS server you have an account with, your domain name, and account information. If your DDNS server is not on the list, there is a generic option where you can provide your DDNS server information.

Routing

When an interface has some form of changing IP address (DDNS, PPPoE, or DHCP assigned address), routing needs special attention. The standard static route cannot handle the changing IP address. The solution is to use the dynamic-gateway command in the CLI. Say for example you already have four static routes, and you have a PPPoE connection over the wan2 interface and you want to use that as your default route.
The route is configured on the dynamic address VPN peer trying to access the static address FortiGate unit.

To configure dynamic gateway routing - CLI

```bash
config router static
edit 5
   set dst 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
   set dynamic-gateway enable
   set device wan2
next
end
```

For more information on DDNS, see the System Administration guide.

Dynamic DNS over VPN

IPsec VPN expects an IP address for each end of the VPN tunnel. All configuration and communication with that tunnel depends on the IP addresses as reference points. However, when the interface the tunnel is on has DDNS enabled there is no set IP address. The remote end of the VPN tunnel now needs another way to reference your end of the VPN tunnel. This is accomplished using Local ID.

A FortiGate unit that has a domain name and a dynamic IP address can initiate VPN connections anytime—the remote peer can reply to the local FortiGate unit using the source IP address that was sent in the packet header because it is current. Without doing a DNS lookup first, the remote peer runs the risk of the dynamic IP changing before it attempts to connect. To avoid this, the remote peer must perform a DNS lookup for the domain name of to be sure of the dynamic IP address before initiating the connection.

Remote Gateway

When configuring the Phase 1 entry for a VPN tunnel, the Remote Gateway determines the addressing method the remote end of the tunnel uses as one of Static IP Address, Dialup User, or Dynamic DNS. There are different fields for each option.

When you select the Dynamic DNS VPN type there is a related field called Dynamic DNS. The Dynamic DNS field is asking for the FQDN of the remote end of the tunnel. It uses this information to look up the IP address of the remote end of the tunnel through the DDNS server associated with that domain name.

Local ID (peer ID)

The Local ID or peer ID can be used to uniquely identify one end of a VPN tunnel. This enables a more secure connection. Also if you have multiple VPN tunnels negotiating, this ensures the proper remote and local ends connect. When you configure it on your end, it is your Local ID. When the remote end connects to you, they see it as your peer ID.

If you are debugging a VPN connection, the Local ID is part of the VPN negotiations. You can use it to help troubleshoot connection problems.

To configure your Local ID

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create New Phase 1 or edit an existing Phase 1 entry.
3. Select Advanced.
4. In the P1 Proposal section, enter your Local ID.
5. Select OK.
The default configuration is to accept all local IDs (peer IDs). If you have the Local ID set, the remote end of the tunnel must be configured to accept your Local ID.

To accept a specific Peer ID
1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create New Phase 1.
3. Select Aggressive mode.
4. For Peer Options, select Accept this peer ID. This option becomes visible only when Aggressive mode is selected.
5. Enter the string the other end of the tunnel used for its Local ID.
6. Configure the rest of the Phase 1 entry as required.
7. Select OK.

Route-based or policy-based VPN

VPN over dynamic DNS can be configured with either route-based or policy-based VPN settings. Both are valid, but have differences in configuration. Choose the best method based on your requirements. For more information on route-based and policy-based, see “Types of VPNs” on page 21.

Route-based VPN configuration requires two security policies to be configured (one for each direction of traffic) to permit traffic over the VPN virtual interface, and you must also add a static route entry for that VPN interface or the VPN traffic will not reach its destination. See “Creating branch_2 route-based security policies” on page 107 and “Creating branch_1 route-based security policies” on page 112.

Policy-based VPN configuration uses more complex and often more IPsec security policies, but does not require a static route entry. It has the benefit of being able to configure multiple policies for handling multiple protocols in different ways, such as more scanning of less secure protocols or guaranteeing a minimum bandwidth for protocols such as VoIP. See “Creating branch_2 policy-based security policies” on page 109 and “Creating branch_1 policy-based security policies” on page 113

Dynamic DNS topology

In this scenario, two branch offices each have a FortiGate unit and are connected in a gateway-to-gateway VPN configuration. One FortiGate unit has a domain name (example.com) with a dynamic IP address. See branch_2 in Figure 13.

Whenever the branch_2 unit connects to the Internet (and possibly also at predefined intervals set by the ISP), the ISP may assign a different IP address to the FortiGate unit. The unit has its domain name registered with a dynamic DNS service. The branch_2 unit checks in with the DDNS server on a regular basis, and that server provides the DNS information for the domain name, updating the IP address from time to time. Remote peers have to locate the branch_2 FortiGate unit through a DNS lookup each time to ensure the address they get is current and correct.
General configuration steps

Dynamic DNS configuration

When a remote peer (such as the branch_1 FortiGate unit in Figure 13) initiates a connection to example.com, the local DNS server looks up and returns the IP address that matches the domain name example.com. The remote peer uses the retrieved IP address to establish a VPN connection with the branch_2 FortiGate unit.

Assumptions

- You have administrator access to both FortiGate units.
- Both FortiGate units have interfaces named wan1 and internal. (If not, you can use the alias feature to assign these labels as “nicknames” to other interfaces to follow this example.)
- Both FortiGate units have the most recent firmware installed, have been configured for their networks, and are currently passing normal network traffic.
- The branch_2 FortiGate unit has its wan1 interface defined as a dynamic DNS interface with the domain name of example.com.
- A basic gateway-to-gateway configuration is in place (see “Gateway-to-gateway configurations” on page 69) except one of the FortiGate units has a static domain name and a dynamic IP address instead of a static IP address.
- The FortiGate unit with the domain name is subscribed to one of the supported dynamic DNS services. Contact one of the services to set up an account. For more information and instructions about how to configure the FortiGate unit to push its dynamic IP address to a dynamic DNS server, see the System Administration guide.

General configuration steps

When a FortiGate unit receives a connection request from a remote VPN peer, it uses IPsec phase 1 parameters to establish a secure connection and authenticate the VPN peer. Then, if the security policy permits the connection, the FortiGate unit establishes the tunnel using IPsec phase 2 parameters and applies the security policy. Key management, authentication, and security services are negotiated dynamically through the IKE protocol.
To support these functions, the following general configuration steps must be performed:

- Configure the branch_2 FortiGate unit with the dynamic IP address. This unit uses a Local ID string instead of an IP address to identify itself to the remote peer. See “Configure the dynamically-addressed VPN peer” on page 105.
  - Configuring branch_2 VPN tunnel settings
  - Configuring branch_2 security policies
- Configure the fixed-address VPN peer. To initiate a VPN tunnel with the dynamically-addressed peer, this unit must first retrieve the IP address for the domain from the dynamic DNS service. See “Configure the fixed-address VPN peer” on page 110.
  - Configuring branch_1 VPN tunnel settings
  - Configuring branch_1 security policies

Configure the dynamically-addressed VPN peer

It is assumed that this FortiGate unit (branch_2) has already had its public facing interface, for example the wan1, configured with the proper dynamic DNS configuration.

Figure 14: Configure branch_2, the dynamic address side

Configuring the dynamically-addressed VPN peer includes:

- Configuring branch_2 VPN tunnel settings
- Configuring branch_2 security policies

Configuring branch_2 VPN tunnel settings

Define the phase 1 parameters needed to establish a secure connection with the remote peer. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. During this procedure you need to choose if you will be using route-based or policy-based VPNs.

To configure branch_2 VPN tunnel settings

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create New Phase 1.
3. Enter the following information and select OK.
Configure the dynamically-addressed VPN peer

Dynamic DNS configuration

Configure branch_2 security policies

4 Select **Create Phase 2**.

Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer.

For details on phase 2, see “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57.

5 Enter the following information and select **OK**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter <code>branch_2</code>, a name to identify the VPN tunnel. This name appears in phase 2 configurations, security policies, and the VPN monitor.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote Gateway</strong></td>
<td>Select <strong>Static IP Address</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The remote peer this FortiGate is connecting to has a static IP public address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the remote interface is PPPoE do not select <strong>Retrieve default gateway from server</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP Address</strong></td>
<td>Enter 172.16.20.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The IP address of the public interface to the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mode</strong></td>
<td>Select <strong>Aggressive</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advanced</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable for a route-based VPN and when configuring policies, go to “Creating branch_2 route-based security policies” on page 107.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disable for a policy-based VPN and when configuring policies, go to “Creating branch_2 policy-based security policies” on page 109.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If enabled, default settings are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local ID</strong></td>
<td>Enter <code>example.com</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A character string used by the <code>branch_2</code> FortiGate unit to identify itself to the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This value must be identical to the value in the <code>Accept this peer ID</code> field of the phase 1 remote gateway configuration on the <code>branch_1</code> remote peer. See “Configuring branch_1 VPN tunnel settings” on page 110.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring branch_2 security policies

Define security policies to permit communications between the private networks through the VPN tunnel. Route-based and policy-based VPNs require different security policies.

For detailed information about creating security policies, see “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64.

After defining the two address ranges, select one of “Creating branch_2 route-based security policies” on page 107 or “Creating branch_2 policy-based security policies” on page 109 to configure the appropriate VPN policies.
Define address ranges for branch_2 security policies

Define VPN connection names for the address ranges of the private networks. These addresses are used in the security policies that permit communication between the networks. For more information, see “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.

Define an address name for the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the local FortiGate unit.

To define branch_2 address ranges

1. Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2. Select Create New.
3. Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter branch_2_internal. Enter a meaningful name.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet / IP Range</td>
<td>10.10.10.0/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Include the netmask or specify a specific range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The interface that will be handling the traffic from the internal network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Define an address name for the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the remote peer.

4. Select Create New.
5. Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter branch_1_internal. A meaningful name for the private network at the remote end of the VPN tunnel.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet / IP Range</td>
<td>192.168.1.0/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Include the netmask. Optionally you can specify a range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The interface that will be handling the remote VPN traffic on this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are unsure, or multiple interfaces may be handling this traffic use any.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating branch_2 route-based security policies

Define ACCEPT security policies to permit communication between the branch_2 and branch_1 private networks.

Once the route-based policy is configured a routing entry must be configured to route traffic over the VPN interface.
To create route-based security policies

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

2. Select Create New.

   Define a policy to permit the branch_2 local FortiGate unit to initiate a VPN session with the branch_1 VPN peer.

3. Enter the following information, and select OK.

   | Source Interface/Zone | Select internal. 
The interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit. |
   |-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
   | Source Address Name   | Select branch_2_internal. 
Select the address name for the private network behind this FortiGate unit. |
   | Destination Interface/Zone | Select branch_2. 
The VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface). |
   | Destination Address Name | Select branch_1_internal. 
The address name the private network behind the remote peer. |
   | Action | Select ACCEPT. 
Accept VPN traffic on this interface pair in this direction. |
   | NAT | Disable. |
   | Comment | route-based: Initiate a branch_2 to branch_1 VPN tunnel |

4. Optionally configure any other security policy settings you require such as UTM or traffic shaping for this policy.

   Define a policy to permit the branch_1 remote VPN peer to initiate VPN sessions.

5. Enter the following information, and select OK.

   | Source Interface/Zone | Select branch_2. 
The VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface). |
   |-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
   | Source Address Name   | Select branch_1_internal. 
The address name for the private network behind the remote peer. |
   | Destination Interface/Zone | Select internal. 
The interface connecting the private network behind this FortiGate unit. |
   | Destination Address Name | Select branch_2_internal. 
The address name for the private network behind this FortiGate unit. |
   | Action | Select ACCEPT. |
   | NAT | Disable. |
   | Comment | route-based: Initiate a branch_1 to branch_2 internal VPN tunnel |
6 Optionally configure any other security policy settings you require such as UTM or traffic shaping for this policy.

7 Place these policies in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses. This will ensure VPN traffic is matched against the VPN policies before any other policies.

To create routing entry for VPN interface - CLI

```
cfg router static
  edit 5
  set dst 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
  set dynamic-gateway enable
  set device wan1
  next
end
```

This routing entry must be added in the CLI because the dynamic-gateway option is not available in the web-based manager.

Creating branch_2 policy-based security policies

Define an IPsec policy to permit VPN sessions between the private networks.

1 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

2 Select Create New.

Define an IPsec policy to permit the VPN sessions between the local branch_2 unit and the remote branch_1 unit.

3 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select internal. The interface connecting the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select branch_2_internal. The address name for the private network behind this local FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select wan1. The FortiGate unit’s public interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select branch_1_internal. The address name for the private network behind branch_1, the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select branch_2. The name of the phase 1 tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Inbound</td>
<td>Select both Allow inbound and Allow outbound to enable traffic from either direction to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Outbound</td>
<td>If you have problems connecting, try enabling NAT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>policy-based: allows traffic in either direction to initiate the VPN tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Optionally configure any other security policy settings you require such as UTM or traffic shaping for this policy.
5 Place these policies in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses. This will ensure VPN traffic is matched against the VPN policies before any other policies.

Configure the fixed-address VPN peer

The fixed-address VPN peer, branch_1, needs to retrieve the IP address from the dynamic DNS service to initiate communication with the dynamically-addressed peer, branch_2. It also depends on the peer ID (local ID) to initiate the VPN tunnel with branch_2.

Figure 15: Configure branch_1, the fixed address side

Configuring the fixed-address VPN peer includes:
- Configuring branch_1 VPN tunnel settings
- Configuring branch_1 security policies

Configuring branch_1 VPN tunnel settings

Define the phase 1 parameters needed to establish a secure connection with the remote peer. For more information, see “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39.

To configure branch_1 phase 1 VPN settings

1 Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2 Select Create New Phase 1.
3 Enter the following information and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter branch_1. A name to identify the VPN tunnel. This name appears in phase 2 configurations, security policies and the VPN monitor.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Dynamic DNS. The remote peer this FortiGate is connecting to has a dynamic IP address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dynamic DNS</th>
<th>Type the fully qualified domain name of the remote peer (for example, example.com).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>Enter wan1. The public facing interface on the fixed-address FortiGate unit. This interface cannot be a loopback interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Select Aggressive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Select Accept this peer ID, and enter example.com. This option only appears when the mode is set to Aggressive. The identifier of the FortiGate unit with the dynamic address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Enable for a route-based VPN and when configuring policies, go to “Creating branch_1 route-based security policies” on page 112. Disable for a policy-based VPN and when configuring policies, go to “Creating branch_1 policy-based security policies” on page 113. If Interface mode is enabled, default settings are used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter branch_1_p2. A name to identify this phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select branch_1. The name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined for the remote peer. You can select the name of the remote gateway from the Dynamic DNS part of the list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring branch_1 security policies**

The **branch_1** FortiGate unit has a fixed IP address and will be connecting to the **branch_2** FortiGate unit that has a dynamic IP address and a domain name of example.com.

Remember if you are using route-based security policies that you must add a route for the VPN traffic.

**Defining address ranges for branch_1 security policies**

As with **branch_2** previously, **branch_1** needs address ranges defined as well. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63.

1 Go to Firewall Objects > Address > Address.
2 Select Create New.
3 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter branch_2_internal. A meaningful name for the private network behind the <strong>branch_2</strong> FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Subnet/IP Range.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure the fixed-address VPN peer Dynamic DNS configuration

IPsec VPNs for FortiOS 4.0 MR3

112

01-434-112804-20120111

http://docs.fortinet.com/

4 Define an address name for the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the remote peer.

5 Select Create New.

6 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subnet / IP Range</th>
<th>10.10.10.0/24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include the netmask or specify a specific range.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1 Define an address name for the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the remote peer.

5.1 Select Create New.

6.1 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>Enter branch_1_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A meaningful name for the private network behind the branch_1 peer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Subnet/IP Range.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subnet / IP Range</th>
<th>192.168.1.0/24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include the netmask or specify a specific range.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This is the interface on this FortiGate unit that will be handling with this traffic.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating branch_1 route-based security policies

Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64.

1 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

2 Select Create New.

3 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The interface that connects to the private network behind the branch_1 FortiGate unit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Address Name</th>
<th>Select branch_1_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The address name that you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select branch_1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface) you configured earlier.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Address Name</th>
<th>Select branch_2_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The address name that you defined for the private network behind the branch_2 peer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Select ACCEPT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAT</th>
<th>Disable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Internal -&gt; branch22</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
To permit the remote client to initiate communication, you need to define a security policy for communication in that direction.

4 Select Create New.

5 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select branch_1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface) you configured earlier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Address Name</th>
<th>Select branch_2_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The address name that you defined for the private network behind the branch_2 remote peer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Address Name</th>
<th>Select branch_1_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The address name that you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Select ACCEPT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAT</th>
<th>Disable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>branch_2 -&gt; Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Creating branch_1 policy-based security policies**

A policy-based security policy allows you the flexibility to allow inbound or outbound traffic or both through this single policy.

This policy-based IPsec VPN security policy allows both inbound and outbound traffic

1 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

2 Select Create New.

3 Enter the following information, and select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Address Name</th>
<th>Select branch_1_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The address name that you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select wan1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The FortiGate unit’s public interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Address Name</th>
<th>Select branch_2_internal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The address name that you defined for the private network behind the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Place this security policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

**Testing**

Once both ends are configured, you can test the VPN tunnel.

**To test the VPN initiated by branch_2**

1. On branch_2, go to **VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor**.
   
   All IPsec VPN tunnels will be listed on this page, no matter if they are connected or disconnected.

2. Select the tunnel listed for branch_2, and select the status column for that entry.
   
   The status will say *Bring Up* and remote port, incoming and outgoing data will all be zero. This indicates an inactive tunnel. When you select *Bring Up*, the FortiGate will try to set up a VPN session over this tunnel. If it is successful, *Bring Up* will change to *Active*, and the arrow icon will change to a green up arrow icon.

3. If this does not create a VPN tunnel with increasing values for incoming and outgoing data, you need to start troubleshooting:

   **To test the VPN initiated by branch_1**

   1. On branch_1, go to **VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor**.

   2. Select the tunnel listed for branch_1, and select the status column.
      
      The difference between branch_2 and branch_1 at this point is that the tunnel entry for branch_1 will not have a remote gateway IP address. It will be resolved when the VPN tunnel is started.

   3. If this does not create a VPN tunnel with increasing values for incoming and outgoing data, you need to start troubleshooting.

   Some troubleshooting ideas include:

   - If there was no entry for the tunnel on the monitor page, check the Auto Key (IKE) page to verify the phase 1 and phase 2 entries exist.
   - Check the security policy or policies, and ensure there is an outgoing policy as a minimum.
   - Check that you entered a local ID in the phase 1 configuration, and that branch_1 has the same local ID.
   - Ensure the local DNS server has an up-to-date DNS entry for example.com.

   For more information on VPN troubleshooting and testing, see “**VPN troubleshooting tips**” on page 241.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Select IPSEC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **VPN Tunnel** | Select `branch_1`.  
The name of the phase 1 configuration that you created earlier.  
Select *Allow inbound* to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel.  
Select *Allow outbound* to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel. |

---
The FortiClient Endpoint Security application is an IPsec VPN client with antivirus, antispam and firewall capabilities. This section explains how to configure dialup VPN connections between a FortiGate unit and one or more FortiClient Endpoint Security applications.

FortiClient users are usually mobile or remote users who need to connect to a private network behind a FortiGate unit. For example, the users might be employees who connect to the office network while traveling or from their homes.

For greatest ease of use, the FortiClient application can download the VPN settings from the FortiGate unit to configure itself automatically. This section covers both automatic and manual configuration.

The FortiClient configurations in this guide do not apply to the FortiClient Consumer Edition, which does not include the IPsec VPN feature.

The following topics are included in this section:
- Configuration overview
- FortiClient-to-FortiGate VPN configuration steps
- Configure the FortiGate unit
- Configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application
- Adding XAuth authentication
- FortiClient dialup-client configuration example

Configuration overview

Dialup users typically obtain dynamic IP addresses from an ISP through Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) or Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE). Then, the FortiClient Endpoint Security application initiates a connection to a FortiGate dialup server.

By default the FortiClient dialup client has the same IP address as the host PC on which it runs. If the host connects directly to the Internet, this is a public IP address. If the host is behind a NAT device, such as a router, the IP address is a private IP address. The NAT device must be NAT traversal (NAT-T) compatible to pass encrypted packets (see “NAT traversal” on page 52). The FortiClient application also can be configured to use a virtual IP address (VIP). For the duration of the connection, the FortiClient application and the FortiGate unit both use the VIP address as the IP address of the FortiClient dialup client.

For a faster and easier method of configuring a FortiGate - to - FortiClient VPN, see “One button FortiGate - to - FortiClient Phase1 VPN” on page 117.
The FortiClient application sends its encrypted packets to the VPN remote gateway, which is usually the public interface of the FortiGate unit. It also uses this interface to download VPN settings from the FortiGate unit. See “Automatic configuration of FortiClient dialup clients” on page 116.

Figure 16: Example FortiClient dialup-client configuration

Peer identification

The FortiClient application can establish an IPsec tunnel with a FortiGate unit configured to act as a dialup server. When the FortiGate unit acts as a dialup server, it does not identify the client using the phase 1 remote gateway address. The IPsec tunnel is established if authentication is successful and the IPsec security policy associated with the tunnel permits access. There are several different ways to authenticate dialup clients and restrict access to private networks based on client credentials. For more information, see “Authenticating remote peers and clients” on page 44.

Automatic configuration of FortiClient dialup clients

The FortiClient application can obtain its VPN settings from the FortiGate VPN server. FortiClient users need to know only the FortiGate VPN server IP address and their user name and password on the FortiGate unit.

The FortiGate unit listens for VPN policy requests from clients on TCP port 8900. When the dialup client connects:

- The client initiates a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection to the FortiGate unit.
- The FortiGate unit requests a user name and password from the FortiClient user. Using these credentials, it authenticates the client and determines which VPN policy applies to the client.
- Provided that authentication is successful, the FortiGate unit downloads a VPN policy to the client over the SSL connection. The information includes IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 settings, and the IP addresses of the private networks that the client is authorized to access.
- The client uses the VPN policy settings to establish an IPsec phase 1 connection and phase 2 tunnel with the FortiGate unit.
One button FortiGate - to - FortiClient Phase1 VPN

On the FortiOS VPN IKE page there is a button to create a Phase1 portion of a VPN tunnel between the FortiGate and FortiClient. Very little information is required for this configuration. No encryption or authentication method is required. This feature is ideal for setting up quick VPN connections with basic settings.

This one button is only compatible with FortiClient 4.3 and higher. Earlier versions of FortiClient need to create IKE Phase-1 object separately, similar to earlier versions of FortiOS.

On the Phase 1 screen (VPN > IPsec > Phase 1) is a button called Create a FortiClient VPN. This button asks a few basic VPN configuration related questions. Once all the information is added, click Create Now. This will create a new dial-up IPsec-interface mode tunnel. Phase 1 and Phase 2 will be added using the default ike settings.

The following Settings will be used when creating a one-button FortiClient VPN Phase1 object:

- Remote Gateway: Dialup User
- Mode: Aggressive
- Enable IPSec Interface Mode
- Default setting for P1 and P2 Proposal
- XAUTH Enable as Server (Auto)
- IKE mode-config will be enabled
- Peer Option set to "Accept any peer ID"
- Rest of the setting use the current defaults (Default value needs to be the same on FCT side)

Once the one button Phase1 is complete, you must create a default Phase2 configuration. This only requires a name for the Phase2 object, and select the one-button Phase1 name.

How the FortiGate unit determines which settings to apply

The FortiGate unit follows these steps to determine the configuration information to send to the FortiClient application:

1. Check the virtual domain associated with the connection to determine which VPN policies might apply.
2. Select the VPN policy that matches the dialup client’s user group and determine which tunnel (phase 1 configuration) is involved.
3. Check all IPsec security policies that use the specified tunnel to determine which private networks the dialup clients may access.
4. Retrieve the rest of the VPN policy information from the existing IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 parameters in the dialup-client configuration.
Using virtual IP addresses

When the FortiClient host PC is located behind a NAT device, unintended IP address overlap issues may arise between the private networks at the two ends of the tunnel. For example, the client’s host might receive a private IP address from a DHCP server on its network that by co-incidence is the same as a private IP address on the network behind the FortiGate unit. A conflict will occur in the host’s routing table and the FortiClient Endpoint Security application will be unable to send traffic through the tunnel. Configuring virtual IP (VIP) addresses for FortiClient applications prevents this problem.

Using VIPs ensures that client IP addresses are in a predictable range. You can then define security policies that allow access only to that source address range. If you do not use VIPs, the security policies must allow all source addresses because you cannot predict the IP address for a remote mobile user.

The FortiClient application must not have the same IP address as any host on the private network behind the FortiGate unit or any other connected FortiClient application. You can ensure this by reserving a range of IP addresses on the private network for FortiClient users. Or, you can assign FortiClient VIPs from an uncommonly used subnet such as 10.254.254.0/24 or 192.168.254.0/24.

You can reserve a VIP address for a particular client according to its device MAC address and type of connection. The DHCP server then always assigns the reserved VIP address to the client. For more information about this feature, see the “dhcp reserved-address” section in the “system” chapter of the FortiGate CLI Reference.

On the host computer, you can find out the VIP address that the FortiClient Endpoint Security application is using. For example, On Windows, type `ipconfig /all` at the Windows Command Prompt. On Linux or Mac OS X, type `ifconfig` in a terminal window. The output will also show the IP address that has been assigned to the host Network Interface Card (NIC).

It is best to assign VIPs using DHCP over IPsec. The FortiGate dialup server can act as a DHCP server or relay requests to an external DHCP server. You can also configure VIPs manually on FortiClient applications, but it is more difficult to ensure that all clients use unique addresses.

If you assign a VIP on the private network behind the FortiGate unit and enable DHCP-IPsec (a phase 2 advanced option), the FortiGate unit acts as a proxy on the local private network for the FortiClient dialup client. Whenever a host on the network behind the dialup server issues an ARP request for the device MAC address of the FortiClient host, the FortiGate unit answers the ARP request on behalf of the FortiClient host and forwards the associated traffic to the FortiClient host through the tunnel. For more information, see “DHCP-IPsec” on page 59.

FortiGate units fully support RFC 3456. The FortiGate DHCP over IPsec feature can be enabled to allocate VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients using a FortiGate DHCP server.

`Figure 17 shows an example of a FortiClient-to-FortiGate VPN where the FortiClient application is assigned a VIP on an uncommonly used subnet. The diagram also shows that while the destination for the information in the encrypted packets is the private network behind the FortiGate unit, the destination of the IPsec packets themselves is the public interface of the FortiGate unit that acts as the end of the VPN tunnel.`
Assigning VIPs by RADIUS user group

If you use XAuth authentication, you can assign users the virtual IP address stored in the Framed-IP-Address field of their record on the RADIUS server. (See RFC 2865 and RFC 2866 for more information about RADIUS fields.) To do this:

- Set the DHCP server IP Assignment Mode to User-group defined method. This is an Advanced setting. See “To configure a DHCP server on the FortiGate unit” on page 123.
- Create a new firewall user group and add the RADIUS server to it.
- In your phase 1 settings, configure the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server and select from User Group the new user group that you created. For more information, see “Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server” on page 54.
- Configure the FortiClient application to use XAuth. See “Adding XAuth authentication” on page 126.

FortiClient dialup-client infrastructure requirements

- To support policy-based VPNs, the FortiGate dialup server may operate in either NAT mode or transparent mode. NAT mode is required if you want to create a route-based VPN.
- If the FortiClient dialup clients will be configured to obtain VIP addresses through FortiGate DHCP relay, a DHCP server must be available on the network behind the FortiGate unit and the DHCP server must have a direct route to the FortiGate unit.
• If the FortiGate interface to the private network is not the default gateway, the private network behind the FortiGate unit must be configured to route IP traffic destined for dialup clients back (through an appropriate gateway) to the FortiGate interface to the private network. As an alternative, you can configure the IPsec security policy on the FortiGate unit to perform inbound NAT on IP packets. Inbound NAT translates the source addresses of inbound decrypted packets into the IP address of the FortiGate interface to the local private network.

FortiClient-to-FortiGate VPN configuration steps

Configuring dialup client capability for FortiClient dialup clients involves the following general configuration steps:

1. If you will be using VIP addresses to identify dialup clients, determine which VIP addresses to use. As a precaution, consider using VIP addresses that are not commonly used.

2. Configure the FortiGate unit to act as a dialup server. See “Configure the FortiGate unit” on page 120.

3. If the dialup clients will be configured to obtain VIP addresses through DHCP over IPsec, configure the FortiGate unit to act as a DHCP server or to relay DHCP requests to an external DHCP server.

4. Configure the dialup clients. See “Configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application” on page 125.

When a FortiGate unit has been configured to accept connections from FortiClient dialup clients, you can optionally arrange to have an IPsec VPN configuration downloaded to FortiClient dialup clients automatically. For more information, see “Configuring the FortiGate unit as a VPN policy server” on page 123.

Configure the FortiGate unit

Configuring the FortiGate unit to establish VPN connections with FortiClient Endpoint Security users involves the following steps:

1. Configure the VPN settings

2. If the dialup clients use automatic configuration, configure the FortiGate unit as a VPN policy server

3. If the dialup clients obtain VIP addresses by DHCP over IPsec, configure an IPsec DHCP server or relay

The procedures in this section cover basic setup of policy-based and route-based VPNs compatible with FortiClient Endpoint Security. A route-based VPN is simpler to configure.

Configuring FortiGate unit VPN settings

To configure FortiGate unit VPN settings to support FortiClient users, you need to:

• configure the FortiGate Phase 1 VPN settings
• configure the FortiGate Phase 2 VPN settings
• add the security policy

1. At the local FortiGate unit, define the phase 1 configuration needed to establish a secure connection with the FortiClient peer. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Enter these settings in particular:
Configure the FortiGate unit

2 Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the FortiClient peer. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

- **Name**: Enter a name to identify this phase 2 configuration.
- **Phase 1**: Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined.
- **Advanced**: Select to configure the following optional setting.
- **DHCP-IPsec**: Select if you provide virtual IP addresses to clients using DHCP.

3 Define names for the addresses or address ranges of the private networks that the VPN links. These addresses are used in the security policies that permit communication between the networks. For more information, see “Defining policy addresses” on page 63. Enter these settings in particular:

- Define an address name for the individual address or the subnet address that the dialup users access through the VPN.
- If FortiClient users are assigned VIP addresses, define an address name for the subnet to which these VIPs belong.

4 Define security policies to permit communication between the private networks through the VPN tunnel. Route-based and policy-based VPNs require different security policies. For detailed information about creating security policies, see “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64.

If the security policy, which grants the VPN Connection is limited to certain services, DHCP must be included, otherwise the client won’t be able to retrieve a lease from the FortiGate’s (IPSec) DHCP server, because the DHCP Request (coming out of the tunnel) will be blocked.
Route-based VPN security policies

Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface) you configured in Step 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you want to allow hosts on the private network to initiate communications with the FortiClient users after the tunnel is established, you need to define a security policy for communication in that direction. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the VPN Tunnel (IPsec Interface) you configured in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Policy-based VPN security policy

Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined in Step 3 for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the FortiGate unit’s public interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>If FortiClient users are assigned VIPs, select the address name that you defined in Step 3 for the VIP subnet. Otherwise, select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you created in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Allow inbound to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Allow outbound if you want to allow hosts on the private network to initiate communications with the FortiClient users after the tunnel is established.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Place VPN policies in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

**Configuring the FortiGate unit as a VPN policy server**

When a FortiClient application set to automatic configuration connects to the FortiGate unit, the FortiGate unit requests a user name and password. If the user supplies valid credentials, the FortiGate unit downloads the VPN settings to the FortiClient application.

You must do the following to configure the FortiGate unit to work as a VPN policy server for FortiClient automatic configuration:

1. Create user accounts for FortiClient users.
2. Create a user group for FortiClient users and the user accounts that you created in step 1.
3. Connect to the FortiGate unit CLI and configure VPN policy distribution as follows:
   ```
   config vpn ipsec forticlient
   edit <policy_name>
   set phase2name <tunnel_name>
   set usergroupname <group_name>
   set status enable
   end
   ```

   `<tunnel_name>` must be the Name you specified in the step 2 of “Configure the FortiGate unit” on page 120. `<group_name>` must be the name of the user group your created for FortiClient users.

**Configuring DHCP service on the FortiGate unit**

If the FortiClient dialup clients are configured to obtain a VIP address using DHCP, configure the FortiGate dialup server to either:

- relay DHCP requests to a DHCP server behind the FortiGate unit (see “To configure DHCP relay on the FortiGate unit” below).
- act as a DHCP server (see “To configure a DHCP server on the FortiGate unit” on page 123).

**To configure DHCP relay on the FortiGate unit**

1. Go to System > Network > DHCP Server and select Create New.
2. In Interface Name, select the interface that connects to the Internet (for example, external or wan1).
3. In Mode, select Relay.
4. In Type select IPsec.
5. In the DHCP Server IP field, type the IP address of the DHCP server.
6. Select OK.
7. If a router is installed between the FortiGate unit and the DHCP server, define a static route to the DHCP server.

**To configure a DHCP server on the FortiGate unit**

1. Go to System > DHCP Server and select Create New.
2. In Interface Name, select the interface that connects to the Internet (for example, external or wan1).
3. In Mode, select Server.
4 Select Enable.
5 Enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>IPsec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP Range</td>
<td>Enter the range of VIP addresses that the DHCP server can dynamically assign to dialup clients when they connect. As a precaution, do not assign VIP addresses that match the private network behind the FortiGate unit. If you need to exclude specific IP addresses from the range, you can define an exclusion range (see Advanced... below). <strong>Note:</strong> If you will use a RADIUS server to assign VIP addresses, these fields are not needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Mask</td>
<td>Enter the network mask of the IP addresses that you specified in the IP Range fields (for example, 255.255.255.0 for a class C network).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Gateway</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the default gateway that the DHCP server assigns to DHCP clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Service</td>
<td>Select Use System DNS Setting. If you want to use a different DNS server for VPN clients, select Specify and enter an IP address in DNS Server 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced...</td>
<td>Select Advanced to configure any of the following options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>If you want the FortiGate unit to assign a domain name to dialup clients when they connect, enter the registered domain name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Lease Time    | Specify a lease time:  
|               | • Select Unlimited to allow the dialup client to use the assigned IP address for an unlimited amount of time (that is, until the client disconnects).  
|               | • Enter the amount of time (in days, hours, and minutes) that the dialup client may use the assigned IP address, after which the dialup client must request new settings from the DHCP server. The range is from 5 minutes to 100 days. |
| IP Assignment Mode | Server IP Range — assign addresses from IP Range (default)  
|                 | User-group defined method — assign addresses from user’s record on RADIUS server. See “Assigning VIPs by RADIUS user group” on page 119. |
| WINS Server 0 | Optionally, enter the IP addresses of one or two Windows Internet Service (WINS) servers that dialup clients can access after the tunnel has been established. |
| WINS Server 1 | Optionally, you can send up to three DHCP options to the dialup client. Select Options and enter the option code in the Code field, and if applicable, type any associated data in the Options field. For more information, see RFC 2132. |
| Options       | To specify any VIP addresses that must be excluded from the VIP address range, select Exclude Ranges, select the + button and then type the starting and ending IP addresses. You can add multiple ranges to exclude. |
Configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application

The following procedure explains how to configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application to communicate with a remote FortiGate dialup server using the VIP address that you specify manually.

Configuring FortiClient to work with VPN policy distribution

If the remote FortiGate gateway is configured as a VPN policy server, you can configure the FortiClient software to download the VPN settings from the FortiGate gateway. For VPNs with automatic configuration, only preshared keys are supported. Certificates are not supported.

To add a VPN with automatic configuration on the FortiClient PC

1. Go to VPN > Connections.
2. Select Advanced and then select Add.
3. In the New Connection dialog box, enter a connection name.
4. For Configuration, select Automatic.
5. For Policy Server, enter the IP address or FQDN of the FortiGate gateway.
6. Select OK.

Configuring FortiClient manually

This procedure explains how to configure the FortiClient application manually using the default IKE and IPsec settings. For more information, refer to the FortiClient Endpoint Security User Guide.

This procedure includes instructions for configuring a virtual IP for the FortiClient application, either manually or using DHCP over IPsec.

To create a FortiClient VPN configuration

1. Go to VPN > Connections.
2. Select Advanced and then select Add.
3. Enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connection Name</th>
<th>Enter a descriptive name for the connection.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>Select Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Enter the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the remote gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Network</td>
<td>Enter the IP address and netmask of the network behind the FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Select Pre-shared Key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the pre-shared key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Follow the remaining steps only if you want to configure a VIP. Otherwise, select OK.
5. Select Advanced.
6. Enable Acquire a virtual IP address and then select the adjacent Config button.
7. Enter the following information and select OK.
Adding XAuth authentication

Extended Authentication (XAuth) increases security by requiring additional user authentication in a separate exchange at the end of the VPN phase 1 negotiation. The FortiGate unit challenges the user for a user name and password. It then forwards the user’s credentials to an external RADIUS or LDAP server for verification.

Implementation of XAuth requires configuration at both the FortiGate unit and the FortiClient application. For information about configuring a FortiGate unit as an XAuth server, see “Using the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server” on page 54. The following procedure explains how to configure the FortiClient application.

To configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application

In the FortiClient Endpoint Security application, make the following changes to the VPN configuration to enable XAuth authentication to the FortiGate unit.

1. Go to VPN > Connections, select the VPN connection you want to modify.
2. Select Advanced > Edit > Advanced.
3. Select the eXtended Authentication check box and then select the Config button to the right of it.

Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Select one of these options:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>Obtain virtual IP address from the FortiGate unit using DHCP over IPsec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manually Set</td>
<td>Assign the virtual IP address manually using the settings in the Manual VIP section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual VIP</td>
<td>These settings are available only if you select Manually Set in the Options section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Enter the IP address that the FortiClient dialup client uses. This address must not conflict with any IP address at either end of the VPN tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet Mask</td>
<td>Enter the subnet for the private network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Server</td>
<td>Optionally, enter the addresses of the DNS and WINS servers that the FortiClient user can access through the VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINS Server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Select OK twice to close the dialog boxes.
9. Repeat this procedure for each FortiClient dialup client.

XAuth is not compatible with IKE version 2.
4 In the Extended Authentication (XAuth) dialog box, select one of the 2 following choices:
   - To always prompt for username and password, select Prompt to login. This is the default.
   - To never prompt for username and password, clear the Prompt to login check box and fill in the User Name and Password fields. The FortiClient Endpoint Security application will use these values and automatically responds to the XAuth challenge.

5 Select OK to close all dialog boxes.

**FortiClient dialup-client configuration example**

This example demonstrates how to set up a FortiClient dialup-client IPsec VPN that uses preshared keys for authentication purposes. In the example configuration, the DHCP over IPsec feature is enabled in the FortiClient Endpoint Security application so that the FortiClient Endpoint Security application can acquire a VIP address through the FortiGate DHCP server. Both route-based and policy-based solutions are covered.

**Figure 18: Example FortiClient dialup-client configuration**

In the example configuration:
- VIP addresses that are not commonly used (in this case, 10.254.254.0/24) are assigned to the FortiClient dialup clients using a DHCP server.
- The dialup clients are have access to the LAN behind FortiGate_1.
- The other network devices are assigned IP addresses as shown in Figure 18.

**Configuring FortiGate_1**

When a FortiGate unit receives a connection request from a dialup client, it uses IPsec phase 1 parameters to establish a secure connection and authenticate the client. Then, if the security policy permits the connection, the FortiGate unit establishes the tunnel using IPsec phase 2 parameters and applies the IPsec security policy. Key management, authentication, and security services are negotiated dynamically through the IKE protocol.
To support these functions, the following general configuration steps must be performed at the FortiGate unit:

- Define the phase 1 parameters that the FortiGate unit needs to authenticate the dialup clients and establish a secure connection. See “To define the phase 1 parameters” on page 128.

- Define the phase 2 parameters that the FortiGate unit needs to create a VPN tunnel and enable all dialup clients having VIP addresses on the 10.254.254.0/24 network to connect using the same tunnel definition. See “To define the phase 2 parameters” on page 128.

- Create security policy to control the permitted services and permitted direction of traffic between the IP source address and the dialup clients. See “To define the firewall addresses” on page 128.

- Configure the FortiGate unit to service DHCP requests from dialup clients. See “To configure a DHCP server on the FortiGate unit” on page 130.

**To define the phase 1 parameters**

1. Go to **VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE)**.
2. Select **Create Phase 1**, enter the following information, and select **OK**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>todialups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Dialup User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Port 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>hardtoguess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Enable for route-based VPN. Disable for policy-based VPN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To define the phase 2 parameters**

1. Go to **VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE)** and select **Create Phase 2**.
2. Select **Advanced**, enter the following information, and select **OK**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>td_2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>todialups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>DHCP-IPsec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To define the firewall addresses**

1. Go to **Firewall Objects > Address > Address**.
2. Select **Create New**, enter the following information, and select **OK**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>internal_net</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
<td>10.11.101.0/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>Port 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Name</th>
<th>dialups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subnet/IP Range</td>
<td>10.254.254.[1-10]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>Route-based VPN: todialups Policy-based VPN: Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The security policies for route-based and policy-based VPNs are described in separate sections below.

**To define security policies - route-based VPN**

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>todialups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>dialups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Port 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>internal_net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Port 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>internal_net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>todialups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>dialups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Port 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>internal_net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>todialups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>DHCP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To define the security policy - policy-based VPN

1 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

2 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Port 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>internal_net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Port 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>dialups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>IPSEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>todialups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Inbound</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allow Outbound

Enable if you want to allow hosts on the private network behind the FortiGate unit to initiate communications with the FortiClient users after the tunnel is established.

Inbound NAT Disable

Outbound NAT Disable

3 Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

To configure a DHCP server on the FortiGate unit

1 Go to System > DHCP Server and select Create New.

2 Enter the following information and select OK:

| Interface Name | Route-based VPN: select virtual IPsec interface. For example, todialups.  
|----------------|Policy-based VPN: select the public interface. For example, Port 1. |
| Mode           | Server |
| Type           | IPSEC. |
| IP Range       | 10.254.254.1 - 10.254.254.10 |

The policy in step 4 is required for DHCP to function properly for policy-based VPNs. You can omit this policy if you change the Destination Address Name to all in the step before. Route-based policies are not affected by this.
Configuring the FortiClient Endpoint Security application

The following procedure explains how to configure the FortiClient Endpoint Security application to connect to FortiGate_1 and broadcast a DHCP request. The dialup client uses the VIP address acquired through FortiGate DHCP relay as its IP source address for the duration of the connection.

To configure FortiClient

1. At the remote host, start FortiClient.
2. Go to VPN > Connections and select Advanced > Add.
3. Enter the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connection Name</th>
<th>Office</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VPN Type</td>
<td>Manual IPsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>172.20.120.141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Network</td>
<td>10.11.101.0 / 255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
<td>hardtoguess</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Advanced.
5. In the Advanced Settings dialog box, select Acquire virtual IP address and then select Config.
6. Verify that the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) over IPSec option is selected, and then select OK.
7. Select OK twice to close the dialog boxes.
8. Exit FortiClient and repeat this procedure at all other remote hosts.
FortiGate dialup-client configurations

This section explains how to set up a FortiGate dialup-client IPsec VPN. In a FortiGate dialup-client configuration, a FortiGate unit with a static IP address acts as a dialup server and a FortiGate unit having a dynamic IP address initiates a VPN tunnel with the FortiGate dialup server.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Configuration overview
- FortiGate dialup-client configuration steps
- Configure the server to accept FortiGate dialup-client connections
- Configure the FortiGate dialup client

Configuration overview

A dialup client can be a FortiGate unit—the FortiGate dialup client typically obtains a dynamic IP address from an ISP through the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) or Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) before initiating a connection to a FortiGate dialup server.

Figure 19: Example FortiGate dialup-client configuration

In a dialup-client configuration, the FortiGate dialup server does not rely on a phase 1 remote gateway address to establish an IPsec VPN connection with dialup clients. As long as authentication is successful and the IPsec security policy associated with the tunnel permits access, the tunnel is established.
Several different ways to authenticate dialup clients and restrict access to private networks based on client credentials are available. To authenticate FortiGate dialup clients and help to distinguish them from FortiClient dialup clients when multiple clients will be connecting to the VPN through the same tunnel, best practices dictate that you assign a unique identifier (local ID or peer ID) to each FortiGate dialup client. For more information, see “Authenticating remote peers and clients” on page 44.

Whenever you add a unique identifier (local ID) to a FortiGate dialup client for identification purposes, you must select Aggressive mode on the FortiGate dialup server and also specify the identifier as a peer ID on the FortiGate dialup server. For more information, see “Enabling VPN access with user accounts and pre-shared keys” on page 47.

Users behind the FortiGate dialup server cannot initiate the tunnel because the FortiGate dialup client does not have a static IP address. After the tunnel is initiated by users behind the FortiGate dialup client, traffic from the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server can be sent to the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client.

Encrypted packets from the FortiGate dialup client are addressed to the public interface of the dialup server. Encrypted packets from the dialup server are addressed either to the public IP address of the FortiGate dialup client (if the dialup client connects to the Internet directly), or if the FortiGate dialup client is behind a NAT device, encrypted packets from the dialup server are addressed to the public IP address of the NAT device.

If a router with NAT capabilities is in front of the FortiGate dialup client, the router must be NAT-T compatible for encrypted traffic to pass through the NAT device. For more information, see “NAT traversal” on page 52.

When the FortiGate dialup server decrypts a packet from the FortiGate dialup client, the source address in the IP header may be one of the following values, depending on the configuration of the network at the far end of the tunnel:

- If the FortiGate dialup client connects to the Internet directly, the source address will be the private IP address of a host or server on the network behind the FortiGate dialup client.
- If the FortiGate dialup client is behind a NAT device, the source address will be the public IP address of the NAT device.

In some cases, computers on the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client may (by co-incidence) have IP addresses that are already used by computers on the network behind the FortiGate dialup server. In this type of situation (ambiguous routing), conflicts may occur in one or both of the FortiGate routing tables and traffic destined for the remote network through the tunnel may not be sent.

In many cases, computers on the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client will most likely obtain IP addresses from a local DHCP server behind the FortiGate dialup client. However, unless the local and remote networks use different private network address spaces, unintended ambiguous routing and IP-address overlap issues may arise.
To avoid these issues, you can configure FortiGate DHCP relay on the dialup client instead of using a DHCP server on the network behind the dialup client. The FortiGate dialup client can be configured to relay DHCP requests from the local private network to a DHCP server that resides on the network behind the FortiGate dialup server (see Figure 20 on page 135). You configure the FortiGate dialup client to pass traffic from the local private network to the remote network by enabling FortiGate DHCP relay on the FortiGate dialup client interface that is connected to the local private network.

Afterward, when a computer on the network behind the dialup client broadcasts a DHCP request, the dialup client relays the message through the tunnel to the remote DHCP server. The remote DHCP server responds with a private IP address for the computer. To avoid ambiguous routing and network overlap issues, the IP addresses assigned to computers behind the dialup client cannot match the network address space used by the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server.

**Figure 20: Preventing network overlap in a FortiGate dialup-client configuration**

When the DHCP server resides on the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server, the IP destination address specified in the IPsec security policy on the FortiGate dialup client must refer to that network.

You must add a static route to the DHCP server FortiGate unit if it is not directly connected to the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server—its IP address does not match the IP address of the private network. Also, the destination address in the IPsec security policy on the FortiGate dialup client must refer to the DHCP server address. The DHCP server must be configured to assign a range of IP addresses different from the DHCP server’s local network, and also different from the private network addresses behind the FortiGate dialup server. See “Routing” on page 101.

**FortiGate dialup-client infrastructure requirements**

The requirements are:

- The FortiGate dialup server must have a static public IP address.
- NAT mode is required if you want to create a route-based VPN.
- The FortiGate dialup server may operate in either NAT mode or transparent mode to support a policy-based VPN.
FortiGate dialup-client configuration steps

- Computers on the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client can obtain IP addresses either from a DHCP server behind the FortiGate dialup client, or a DHCP server behind the FortiGate dialup server.
- If the DHCP server resides on the network behind the dialup client, the DHCP server must be configured to assign IP addresses that do not match the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server.
- If the DHCP server resides on the network behind the FortiGate dialup server, the DHCP server must be configured to assign IP addresses that do not match the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client.

FortiGate dialup-client configuration steps

The procedures in this section assume that computers on the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client obtain IP addresses from a local DHCP server. The assigned IP addresses do not match the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server.

In situations where IP-address overlap between the local and remote private networks is likely to occur, FortiGate DHCP relay can be configured on the FortiGate dialup client to relay DHCP requests to a DHCP server behind the FortiGate dialup server. For more information, see “To configure DHCP relay on the FortiGate unit” on page 123.

Configuring dialup client capability for FortiGate dialup clients involves the following general configuration steps:
- Determine which IP addresses to assign to the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client, and add the IP addresses to the DHCP server behind the FortiGate dialup client. Refer to the software supplier’s documentation to configure the DHCP server.
- Configure the FortiGate dialup client. See “Configure the server to accept FortiGate dialup-client connections” on page 136.
- Configure the FortiGate dialup client. See “Configure the FortiGate dialup client” on page 138.

Configure the server to accept FortiGate dialup-client connections

Before you begin, optionally reserve a unique identifier (peer ID) for the FortiGate dialup client. The dialup client will supply this value to the FortiGate dialup server for authentication purposes during the IPsec phase 1 exchange. In addition, the value will enable you to distinguish FortiGate dialup-client connections from FortiClient dialup-client connections. The same value must be specified on the dialup server and on the dialup client.

1. At the FortiGate dialup server, define the phase 1 parameters needed to authenticate the FortiGate dialup client and establish a secure connection. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify the VPN tunnel. This name appears in phase 2 configurations, security policies and the VPN monitor.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Dialup User.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the interface through which clients connect to the FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure the server to accept FortiGate dialup-client connections

Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the FortiGate dialup client. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify this phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Define names for the addresses or address ranges of the private networks that the VPN links. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63. Enter these settings in particular:

- Define an address name for the server, host, or network behind the FortiGate dialup server.
- Define an address name for the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client.

Define the security policies to permit communications between the private networks through the VPN tunnel. Route-based and policy-based VPNs require different security policies. For detailed information about creating security policies, see “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64.

Route-based VPN security policy
Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between hosts on the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client and the private network behind this FortiGate dialup server. Because communication cannot be initiated in the opposite direction, there is only one policy.

Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the VPN tunnel (IPsec interface) created in Step 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Policy-based VPN security policy

Define an IPsec security policy. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined in Step 3 for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the FortiGate unit’s public interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined in Step 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VPN Tunnel**

- Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you created in Step 1.
- Select *Allow inbound* to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel.
- Clear *Allow outbound* to prevent traffic from the local network from initiating the tunnel after the tunnel has been established.

1. Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

2. If configuring a route-based policy, configure a default route for VPN traffic on this interface.

Configure the FortiGate dialup client

Configure the FortiGate dialup client as follows:

1. At the FortiGate dialup client, define the phase 1 parameters needed to authenticate the dialup server and establish a secure connection. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify the VPN tunnel.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select <em>Static IP Address</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Type the IP address of the dialup server’s public interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the public network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>The FortiGate dialup client has a dynamic IP address, select <em>Aggressive</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select to view the following options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local ID</td>
<td>If you defined a peer ID for the dialup client in the FortiGate dialup server configuration, enter the identifier of the dialup client. The value must be identical to the peer ID that you specified previously in the FortiGate dialup server configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the dialup server. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify this phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the set of phase 1 parameters that you defined in step 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Define names for the addresses or address ranges of the private networks that the VPN links. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63. Enter these settings in particular:

- Define an address name for the server, host, or network behind the FortiGate dialup server.
- Define an address name for the private network behind the FortiGate dialup client.

4 Define security policies to permit communication between the private networks through the VPN tunnel. Route-based and policy-based VPNs require different security policies. For detailed information about creating security policies, see “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64.

### Route-based VPN security policy

Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between hosts on the private network behind this FortiGate dialup client and the private network behind the FortiGate dialup server. Because communication cannot be initiated in the opposite direction, there is only one policy. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the VPN tunnel (IPsec interface) created in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select ACCEPT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Policy-based VPN security policy

Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the address name that you defined in Step 3 for the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the FortiGate unit’s public interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Address Name</th>
<th>Select the address name that you defined in Step 3 for the private network behind the dialup server.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Select IPSEC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you created in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clear <em>Allow inbound</em> to prevent traffic from the remote network from initiating the tunnel after the tunnel has been established.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select <em>Allow outbound</em> to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supporting IKE Mode config clients

IKE Mode Config is an alternative to DHCP over IPsec. A FortiGate unit can be configured as either an IKE Mode Config server or client. This chapter contains the following sections:

- Automatic configuration overview
- IKE Mode Config overview
- Configuring IKE Mode Config
- Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config server
- Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config client

Automatic configuration overview

VPN configuration for remote clients is simpler if it is automated. Several protocols support automatic configuration:

- The Fortinet FortiClient Endpoint Security application can completely configure a VPN connection with a suitably configured FortiGate unit given only the FortiGate unit’s address. This protocol is exclusive to Fortinet. For more information, see the “FortiClient dialup-client configurations” chapter.

- DHCP over IPsec can assign an IP address, Domain, DNS and WINS addresses. The user must first configure IPsec parameters such as gateway address, encryption and authentication algorithms.

- IKE Mode Config can configure host IP address, Domain, DNS and WINS addresses. The user must first configure IPsec parameters such as gateway address, encryption and authentication algorithms. Several network equipment vendors support IKE Mode Config, which is described in the ISAKMP Configuration Method document draft-dukes-ike-mode-cfg-02.txt.

This chapter describes how to configure a FortiGate unit as either an IKE Mode Config server or client.

IKE Mode Config overview

Dialup VPN clients connect to a FortiGate unit that acts as a VPN server, providing the client the necessary configuration information to establish a VPN tunnel. The configuration information typically includes a virtual IP address, netmask, and DNS server address.

IKE Mode Config is available only for VPNs that are route-based, also known as interface-based. A FortiGate unit can function as either an IKE Configuration Method server or client. IKE Mode Config is configurable only in the CLI.
Configuring IKE Mode Config

IKE Mode Config is configured with the CLI command `vpn ipsec phase1-interface`. The `mode-cfg` variable enables IKE Mode Config. The `type` field determines whether you are creating an IKE Mode Config server or a client. Setting `type` to `dynamic` creates a server configuration, otherwise the configuration is a client.

Configuring an IKE Mode Config client

If the FortiGate unit will connect as a dialup client to a remote gateway that supports IKE Mode Config, the relevant `vpn ipsec phase1-interface` variables are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ike-version 1</td>
<td>IKE v1 is the default for FortiGate IPsec VPNs. IKE Mode Config is not compatible with IKE v2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode-cfg enable</td>
<td>Enable IKE Mode Config.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type {ddns</td>
<td>static}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assign-ip {enable</td>
<td>disable}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface &lt;interface_name&gt;</td>
<td>This is a regular IPsec VPN field. Specify the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface to which the IPsec tunnel will be bound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proposal &lt;encryption_combination&gt;</td>
<td>This is a regular IPsec VPN field that determines the encryption and authentication settings that the client will accept. For more information, see “Defining IKE negotiation parameters” on page 49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode-cfg-ip-version {4</td>
<td>6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-version &lt;4</td>
<td>6&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring an IKE Mode Config server

If the FortiGate unit will accept connection requests from dialup clients that support IKE Mode Config, the following `vpn ipsec phase1-interface` settings are required before any other configuration is attempted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ike-version 1</td>
<td>IKE v1 is the default for FortiGate IPsec VPNs. IKE Mode Config is not compatible with IKE v2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode-cfg enable</td>
<td>Enable IKE Mode Config.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type dynamic</td>
<td>Any other setting creates an IKE Mode Config client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supporting IKE Mode config clients

Configuring IKE Mode Config

After you have enabled the basic configuration, you can configure:

- IP address assignment for clients
- DNS and WINS server assignment

**IP address assignment**

Usually you will want to assign IP addresses to clients. The simplest method is to assign addresses from a specific range, similar to a DHCP server.

If your clients are authenticated by a RADIUS server, you can obtain the user’s IP address assignment from the Framed-IP-Address attribute. The user must be authenticated using XAuth.

**To assign IP addresses from an address range**

If your VPN uses IPv4 addresses,

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phasel-interface
  edit vpn1
    set mode-cfg-ipversion 4
    set assign-ip enable
    set assign-ip-type ip
    set assign-ip-from range
    set ipv4-start-ip <range_start>
    set ipv4-end-ip <range_end>
    set ipv4-netmask <netmask>
  end
```

If your VPN uses IPv6 addresses,

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phasel-interface
  edit vpn1
    set mode-cfg-ipversion 6
    set assign-ip enable
    set assign-ip-type ip
    set assign-ip-from range
    set ipv6-start-ip <range_start>
    set ipv6-end-ip <range_end>
  end
```

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interface &lt;interface_name&gt;</td>
<td>This is a regular IPsec VPN field. Specify the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface to which the IPsec tunnel will be bound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proposal &lt;encryption_combination&gt;</td>
<td>This is a regular IPsec VPN field that determines the encryption and authentication settings that the server will accept. For more information, see “Defining IKE negotiation parameters” on page 49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-version &lt;4</td>
<td>6&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To assign IP addresses from a RADIUS server

The users must be authenticated by a RADIUS server and assigned to the FortiGate user group <grpname>. Since the IP address will not be static, type is set to dynamic, and mode-cfg is enabled. This is IKE Configuration Method so that compatible clients can configure themselves with settings that the FortiGate unit provides.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit vpn1
set type dynamic
set mode-cfg enable
set assign-ip enable
set assign-ip-from usrgrp
set xauthtype auto
set authusrgrp <grpname>
end
```

Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config server

In this example, the FortiGate unit assigns IKE Mode Config clients addresses in the range of 10.11.101.160 through 10.11.101.180. DNS and WINS server addresses are also provided. The public interface of the FortiGate unit is Port 1.

The ipv4-split-include variable specifies a firewall address that represents the networks to which the clients will have access. This destination IP address information is sent to the clients.

Only the CLI fields required for IKE Mode Config are shown here. For detailed information about these variables, see the FortiGate CLI Reference.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit vpn1
set ip-version 4
set type dynamic
set interface port1
set proposal 3des-sha1 aes128-sha1
set mode-cfg enable
set mode-cfg-ipversion 4
set assign-ip enable
set assign-ip-type ip
set assign-ip-from range
set ipv4-start-ip 10.11.101.160
set ipv4-end-ip 10.11.101.180
set ipv4-netmask 255.255.255.0
set dns-server1 10.11.101.199
set dns-server2 66.11.168.195
set wins-server1 10.11.101.191
set domain example
set ipv4-split-include OfficeLAN
end
```
Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config client

In this example, the FortiGate unit connects to a VPN gateway with a static IP address that can be reached through Port 1. Only the port, gateway and proposal information needs to be configured. All other configuration information will come from the IKE Mode Config server.

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit vpn1
    set ip-version 4
    set type static
    set remote-gw <gw_address>
    set interface port 1
    set proposal 3des-sha1 aes128-sha1
    set mode-cfg enable
    set mode-cfg-ipversion 4
    set assign-ip enable
  end
```
Example: FortiGate unit as IKE Mode Config client

Supporting IKE Mode config clients
Internet-browsing configuration

This section explains how to support secure web browsing performed by dialup VPN clients, and/or hosts behind a remote VPN peer. Remote users can access the private network behind the local FortiGate unit and browse the Internet securely. All traffic generated remotely is subject to the security policy that controls traffic on the private network behind the local FortiGate unit.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Configuration overview
- Creating an Internet browsing security policy
- Routing all remote traffic through the VPN tunnel

Configuration overview

A VPN provides secure access to a private network behind the FortiGate unit. You can also enable VPN clients to access the Internet securely. The FortiGate unit inspects and processes all traffic between the VPN clients and hosts on the Internet according to the Internet browsing policy. This is accomplished even though the same FortiGate interface is used for both encrypted VPN client traffic and unencrypted Internet traffic.

In Figure 21, FortiGate_1 enables secure Internet browsing for FortiClient Endpoint Security users such as Dialup_1 and users on the Site_2 network behind FortiGate_2, which could be a VPN peer or a dialup client.

Figure 21: Example Internet-browsing configuration

You can adapt any of the following configurations to provide secure Internet browsing:

- a gateway-to-gateway configuration (see “Gateway-to-gateway configurations” on page 69)
- a FortiClient dialup-client configuration (see “FortiClient dialup-client configurations” on page 115)
A FortiGate dialup-client configuration (see “FortiGate dialup-client configurations” on page 133)

The procedures in this section assume that one of these configurations is in place, and that it is operating properly.

To create an internet-browsing configuration based on an existing gateway-to-gateway configuration, you must edit the gateway-to-gateway configuration as follows:

- On the FortiGate unit that will provide Internet access, create an Internet browsing security policy. See “Creating an Internet browsing security policy”, below.
- Configure the remote peer or client to route all traffic through the VPN tunnel. You can do this on a FortiGate unit or on a FortiClient Endpoint Security application. See “Routing all remote traffic through the VPN tunnel” on page 149.

Creating an Internet browsing security policy

On the FortiGate unit that acts as a VPN server and will provide secure access to the Internet, you must create an Internet browsing security policy. This policy differs depending on whether your gateway-to-gateway configuration is policy-based or route-based.

To create an Internet browsing policy - policy-based VPN

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface</th>
<th>The interface to which the VPN tunnel is bound.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface</td>
<td>The interface to which the VPN tunnel is bound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>The internal range of address of the remote spoke site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>IPSEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the tunnel that provides access to the private network behind the FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTM</td>
<td>Select the UTM feature profiles that you want to apply to Internet access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Inbound</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Outbound</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inbound NAT</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To create an Internet browsing policy - route-based VPN

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface</th>
<th>The IPsec VPN interface.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface</td>
<td>The interface that connects to the Internet. The virtual IPsec interface is configured on this physical interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTM</td>
<td>Select the UTM features that you want to apply to Internet access.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VPN clients must be configured to route all Internet traffic through the VPN tunnel.

Routing all remote traffic through the VPN tunnel

To make use of the Internet browsing configuration on the VPN server, the VPN peer or client must route all traffic through the VPN tunnel. Usually, only the traffic destined for the private network behind the FortiGate VPN server is sent through the tunnel.

The remote end of the VPN can be a FortiGate unit that acts as a peer in a gateway-to-gateway configuration or a FortiClient Endpoint Security application that protects an individual client such as a notebook PC.

- To configure a remote peer FortiGate unit for Internet browsing via VPN, see “Configuring a FortiGate remote peer to support Internet browsing”.
- To configure a FortiClient Endpoint Security application for Internet browsing via VPN, see “Configuring a FortiClient application to support Internet browsing” on page 150.

These procedures assume that your VPN connection to the protected private network is working and that you have configured the FortiGate VPN server for Internet browsing as described in “Creating an Internet browsing security policy” on page 148.

Configuring a FortiGate remote peer to support Internet browsing

The configuration changes to send all traffic through the VPN differ for policy-based and route-based VPNS.

To route all traffic through a policy-based VPN

1. At the FortiGate dialup client, go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select the IPsec security policy and then select Edit.
3. From the Destination Address list, select all.
4. Select OK.

All packets are routed through the VPN tunnel, not just packets destined for the protected private network.
To route all traffic through a route-based VPN
1. At the FortiGate dialup client, go to Router > Static > Static Route.
2. Select the default route (destination IP 0.0.0.0) and then select Edit. If there is no default route, select Create New. Enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Select the IPsec virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Leave at default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All packets are routed through the VPN tunnel, not just packets destined for the protected private network.

Configuring a FortiClient application to support Internet browsing

By default, the FortiClient application configures the PC so that traffic destined for the remote protected network passes through the VPN tunnel but all other traffic is sent to the default gateway. You need to modify the FortiClient settings so that it configures the PC to route all outbound traffic through the VPN.

To route all traffic through VPN - FortiClient application
1. At the remote host, start FortiClient.
2. Go to VPN > Connections.
3. Select the definition that connects FortiClient to the FortiGate dialup server.
4. Select Advanced and then select Edit.
5. In the Edit Connection dialog box, select Advanced.
6. In the Remote Network group, select Add.
7. In the IP and Subnet Mask fields, type 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 and select OK.
   The address is added to the Remote Network list. The first destination IP address in the list establishes a VPN tunnel. The second destination address (0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 in this case) forces all other traffic through the VPN tunnel.
8. Select OK.
Redundant VPN configurations

This section discusses the options for supporting redundant and partially redundant IPsec VPNs, using route-based approaches.

The following topics are included in this section:
- Configuration overview
- General configuration steps
- Configure the VPN peers - route-based VPN
- Redundant route-based VPN configuration example
- Partially-redundant route-based VPN example
- Creating a backup IPsec interface

Configuration overview

A FortiGate unit with two interfaces connected to the Internet can be configured to support redundant VPNs to the same remote peer. If the primary connection fails, the FortiGate unit can establish a VPN using the other connection.

Redundant tunnels do not support Tunnel Mode or Manual Keys. You must use Interface Mode.

A fully-redundant configuration requires redundant connections to the Internet on both peers. Figure 22 on page 152 shows an example of this. This is useful to create a reliable connection between two FortiGate units with static IP addresses.

When only one peer has redundant connections, the configuration is partially-redundant. For an example of this, see “Partially-redundant route-based VPN example” on page 166. This is useful to provide reliable service from a FortiGate unit with static IP addresses that accepts connections from dialup IPsec VPN clients.

In a fully-redundant VPN configuration with two interfaces on each peer, four distinct paths are possible for VPN traffic from end to end. Each interface on a peer can communicate with both interfaces on the other peer. This ensures that a VPN will be available as long as each peer has one working connection to the Internet.

You configure a VPN and an entry in the routing table for each of the four paths. All of these VPNs are ready to carry data. You set different routing distances for each route and only the shortest distance route is used. If this route fails, the route with the next shortest distance is used.

The redundant configurations described in this chapter use route-based VPNs, otherwise known as virtual IPsec interfaces. This means that the FortiGate unit must operate in NAT mode. You must use auto-keying. A VPN that is created using manual keys (see “Manual-key configurations” on page 183) cannot be included in a redundant-tunnel configuration.
The configuration described here assumes that your redundant VPNs are essentially equal in cost and capability. When the original VPN returns to service, traffic continues to use the replacement VPN until the replacement VPN fails. If your redundant VPN uses more expensive facilities, you want to use it only as a backup while the main VPN is down. For information on how to do this, see “Creating a backup IPsec interface” on page 173.

**Figure 22: Example redundant-tunnel configuration**

A VPN that is created using manual keys (see “Manual-key configurations” on page 183) cannot be included in a redundant-tunnel configuration.

**General configuration steps**

A redundant configuration at each VPN peer includes:

- one phase 1 configuration (virtual IPsec interface) for each path between the two peers. In a fully-meshed redundant configuration, each network interface on one peer can communicate with each network interface on the remote peer. If both peers have two public interfaces, this means that each peer has four paths, for example.
- one phase 2 definition for each phase 1 configuration
- one static route for each IPsec interface, with different distance values to prioritize the routes
- two Accept security policies per IPsec interface, one for each direction of traffic
- dead peer detection enabled in each phase 1 definition

The procedures in this section assume that two separate interfaces to the Internet are available on each VPN peer.
Configure the VPN peers - route-based VPN

VPN peers are configured using Interface Mode for redundant tunnels.
Configure each VPN peer as follows:

1. Ensure that the interfaces used in the VPN have static IP addresses.
2. Create a phase 1 configuration for each of the paths between the peers. Enable IPsec Interface mode so that this creates a virtual IPsec interface. Enable dead peer detection so that one of the other paths is activated if this path fails.

Enter these settings in particular:

Path 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Static IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Type the IP address of the primary interface of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the primary public interface of this peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other settings as required by VPN.

Path 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Static IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Type the IP address of the secondary interface of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the primary public interface of this peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other settings as required by VPN.

Path 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Static IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Type the IP address of the primary interface of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the secondary public interface of this peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other settings as required by VPN.
Path 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Remote Gateway</strong></th>
<th>Select Static IP Address.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP Address</strong></td>
<td>Type the IP address of the secondary interface of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local Interface</strong></td>
<td>Select the secondary public interface of this peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</strong></td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dead Peer Detection</strong></td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other settings as required by VPN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information, see “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39.

3 Create a phase 2 definition for each path. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Phase 1</strong></th>
<th>Select the phase 1 configuration (virtual IPsec interface) that you defined for this path. You can select the name from the Static IP Address part of the list.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4 Create a route for each path to the other peer. If there are two ports on each peer, there are four possible paths between the peer devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Destination IP/Mask</strong></th>
<th>The IP address and netmask of the private network behind the remote peer.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device</strong></td>
<td>One of the virtual IPsec interfaces on the local peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distance</strong></td>
<td>For each path, enter a different value to prioritize the paths.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Define the security policy for the local primary interface. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64. You need to create two policies for each path to enable communication in both directions. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Source Interface/Zone</strong></th>
<th>Select the local interface to the internal (private) network</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source Address Name</strong></td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Destination Interface/Zone</strong></td>
<td>Select one of the virtual IPsec interfaces you created in Step 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Destination Address Name</strong></td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Schedule</strong></td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service</strong></td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Action</strong></td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Source Interface/Zone</strong></th>
<th>Select one of the virtual IPsec interfaces you created in Step 2.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source Address Name</strong></td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Destination Interface/Zone</strong></td>
<td>Select the local interface to the internal (private) network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Destination Address Name</strong></td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Redundant route-based VPN configuration example

This example demonstrates a fully redundant site-to-site VPN configuration using route-based VPNS. At each site, the FortiGate unit has two interfaces connected to the Internet through different ISPs. This means that there are four possible paths for communication between the two units. In this example, these paths, listed in descending priority, are:

- FortiGate_1 WAN 1 to FortiGate_2 WAN 1
- FortiGate_1 WAN 1 to FortiGate_2 WAN 2
- FortiGate_1 WAN 2 to FortiGate_2 WAN 1
- FortiGate_1 WAN 2 to FortiGate_2 WAN 2

Figure 23: Example redundant route-based VPN configuration

For each path, VPN configuration, security policies and routing are defined. By specifying a different routing distance for each path, the paths are prioritized. A VPN tunnel is established on each path, but only the highest priority one is used. If the highest priority path goes down, the traffic is automatically routed over the next highest priority path. You could use dynamic routing, but to keep this example simple, static routing is used.

Configuring FortiGate_1

You must

- configure the interfaces involved in the VPN
- define the phase 1 configuration for each of the four possible paths, creating a virtual IPsec interface for each one
- define the phase 2 configuration for each of the four possible paths
- configure routes for the four IPsec interfaces, assigning the appropriate priorities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schedule</th>
<th>Always</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

7 Repeat this procedure at the remote FortiGate unit.
To configure the network interfaces

1. Go to System > Network > Interface.
2. Select the Internal interface and select Edit.
3. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select the WAN1 interface and select Edit, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>192.168.10.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Select the WAN2 interface and select Edit, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>172.16.20.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure the IPsec interfaces (phase 1 configurations)

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_1_A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>192.168.20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_1_B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Redundant VPN configurations

Redundant route-based VPN configuration example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP Address</th>
<th>172.16.30.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced

Enable IPsec Interface Mode | Select |
Dead Peer Detection | Select |

4 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_1_C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>192.168.20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced

Enable IPsec Interface Mode | Select |
Dead Peer Detection | Select |

5 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_1_D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>172.16.30.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced

Enable IPsec Interface Mode | Select |
Dead Peer Detection | Select |
To define the phase 2 configurations for the four VPNs
1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_A.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_1_A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_1_B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_C.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_1_C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_1_D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure routes
1. Go to Router > Static > Static Route.
2. Select Create New, enter the following default gateway information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>192.168.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.31.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_1_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.31.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_1_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.31.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_1_C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.31.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_1_D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure security policies

1 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

2 Select Create New, enter the following information, and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_1_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Site_1_A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_1_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Any</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Site_1_B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_1_C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Site_1_C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_1_D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Site_1_D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring FortiGate_2

The configuration for FortiGate_2 is very similar that of FortiGate_1. You must

- configure the interfaces involved in the VPN
- define the phase 1 configuration for each of the four possible paths, creating a virtual IPsec interface for each one
- define the phase 2 configuration for each of the four possible paths
- configure routes for the four IPsec interfaces, assigning the appropriate priorities
- configure incoming and outgoing security policies between the internal interface and each of the virtual IPsec interfaces

#### To configure the network interfaces

1. Go to System > Network > Interface.
2. Select the Internal interface and then select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>10.31.101.0/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select the WAN1 interface and then select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>192.168.20.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select the WAN2 interface and then select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>172.16.30.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### To configure the IPsec interfaces (phase 1 configurations)

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_2_A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>192.168.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_2_B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>172.16.20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_2_C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>192.168.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enable IPsec Interface Mode | Select
---|---
Dead Peer Detection | Select

5 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

| Name | Site_2_D |
| Remote Gateway | Static IP Address |
| IP Address | 172.16.20.2 |
| Local Interface | WAN1 |
| Mode | Main |
| Authentication Method | Preshared Key |
| Pre-shared Key | Enter the preshared key. |
| Peer Options | Accept any peer ID |
| Advanced | |
| Enable IPsec Interface Mode | Select |
| Dead Peer Detection | Select |

To define the phase 2 configurations for the four VPNs

1 Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2 Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

| Name | Route_A. |
| Phase 1 | Site_2_A |

3 Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

| Name | Route_B. |
| Phase 1 | Site_2_B |

4 Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

| Name | Route_C. |
| Phase 1 | Site_2_C |

5 Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

| Name | Route_D. |
| Phase 1 | Site_2_D |

To configure routes

1 Go to Router > Static > Static Route.
2 Select Create New, enter the following default gateway information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>192.168.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_2_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_2_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_2_C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Select Create New, enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_2_D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure security policies

1 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2 Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_2_A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Redundant VPN configurations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Address Name</th>
<th>All</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Site_2_A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_2_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Site_2_B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_2_C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Partially-redundant route-based VPN example

This example demonstrates how to set up a partially redundant IPsec VPN between a local FortiGate unit and a remote VPN peer that receives a dynamic IP address from an ISP before it connects to the FortiGate unit. For more information about FortiGate dialup-client configurations, see “FortiGate dialup-client configurations” on page 133.
When a FortiGate unit has more than one interface to the Internet (see FortiGate_1 in Figure 24), you can configure redundant routes—if the primary connection fails, the FortiGate unit can establish a VPN using the redundant connection.

In this case, FortiGate_2 has only one connection to the Internet. If the link to the ISP were to go down, the connection to FortiGate_1 would be lost, and the tunnel would be taken down. The tunnel is said to be partially redundant because FortiGate_2 does not support a redundant connection.

In the configuration example:

- Both FortiGate units operate in NAT mode.
- Two separate interfaces to the Internet (192.168.10.2 and 172.16.20.2) are available on FortiGate_1. Each interface has a static public IP address.
- FortiGate_2 has a single connection to the Internet and obtains a dynamic public IP address (for example, 172.16.30.1) when it connects to the Internet.
- FortiGate_2 forwards IP packets from the SOHO network (10.31.101.0/24) to the corporate network (10.21.101.0/24) behind FortiGate_1 through a partially redundant IPsec VPN. Encrypted packets from FortiGate_2 are addressed to the public interface of FortiGate_1. Encrypted packets from FortiGate_1 are addressed to the public IP address of FortiGate_2.

There are two possible paths for communication between the two units. In this example, these paths, listed in descending priority, are:

- FortiGate_1 WAN 1 to FortiGate_2 WAN 1
- FortiGate_1 WAN 2 to FortiGate_2 WAN 1

For each path, VPN configuration, security policies and routing are defined. By specifying a different routing distance for each path, the paths are prioritized. A VPN tunnel is established on each path, but only the highest priority one is used. If the highest priority path goes down, the traffic is automatically routed over the next highest priority path. You could use dynamic routing, but to keep this example simple, static routing is used.

**Figure 24: Example partially redundant route-based configuration**
Configuring FortiGate_1

You must

- configure the interfaces involved in the VPN
- define the phase 1 configuration for each of the two possible paths, creating a virtual IPsec interface for each one
- define the phase 2 configuration for each of the two possible paths
- configure incoming and outgoing security policies between the internal interface and each of the virtual IPsec interfaces

To configure the network interfaces

1. Go to System > Network > Interface.
2. Select the Internal interface and select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>10.21.101.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select the WAN1 interface and select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>192.168.10.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select the WAN2 interface and select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>172.16.20.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure the IPsec interfaces (phase 1 configurations)

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_1_A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Dialup User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To define the phase 2 configurations for the two VPNs

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_A.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_1_A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_1_B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure routes

1. Go to Router > Static > Static Route.
2. Select Create New, enter the following default gateway information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>192.168.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To configure security policies

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
2. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_1_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select Create New, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_1_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring FortiGate_2

The configuration for FortiGate_2 is similar to that of FortiGate_1. You must
- configure the interface involved in the VPN
- define the phase 1 configuration for the primary and redundant paths, creating a virtual IPsec interface for each one
- define the phase 2 configurations for the primary and redundant paths, defining the internal network as the source address so that FortiGate_1 can automatically configure routing
- configure the routes for the two IPsec interfaces, assigning the appropriate priorities
- configure security policies between the internal interface and each of the virtual IPsec interfaces

To configure the network interfaces

1. Go to System > Network > Interface.
2. Select the Internal interface and select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addressing mode</th>
<th>Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP/Netmask</td>
<td>10.31.101.2/255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Select the WAN1 interface and select Edit. Enter the following information and then select OK:

| Addressing mode | DHCP |

To configure the two IPsec interfaces (phase 1 configurations)

1 Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_2_A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>192.168.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Select Create Phase 1, enter the following information, and select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Site_2_B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Static IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>172.16.20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>WAN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Options</td>
<td>Accept any peer ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define the phase 2 configurations for the two VPNs

1 Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE).
2 Select Create Phase 2, enter the following information and select OK:
### Partially-redundant route-based VPN example

**Redundant VPN configurations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_A.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_2_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Address</td>
<td>10.31.101.0/24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Select *Create Phase 2*, enter the following information and select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route_B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Site_2_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Address</td>
<td>10.31.101.0/24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure routes

1. Go to *Router > Static > Static Route*.
2. Select *Create New*, enter the following information and then select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_2_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select *Create New*, enter the following information and then select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>10.21.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Site_2_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure security policies

1. Go to *Policy > Policy > Policy*.
2. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and select *OK*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Site_2_A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select *Create New*, enter the following information, and select *OK*:
Creating a backup IPsec interface

You can configure a route-based VPN that acts as a backup facility to another VPN. It is used only while your main VPN is out of service. This is desirable when the redundant VPN uses a more expensive facility.

You can configure a backup IPsec interface only in the CLI. The backup feature works only on interfaces with static addresses that have dead peer detection enabled. The monitor-phase1 option creates a backup VPN for the specified phase 1 configuration.

In the following example, backup_vpn is a backup for main_vpn.

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phasel-interface
edit main_vpn
    set dpd on
    set interface port1
    set nattraversal enable
    set psksecret "hard-to-guess"
    set remote-gw 192.168.10.8
    set type static
end
edit backup_vpn
    set dpd on
    set interface port2
    set monitor-phasel main_vpn
    set nattraversal enable
    set psksecret "hard-to-guess"
    set remote-gw 192.168.10.8
    set type static
end
```
Transparent mode VPNs

This section describes transparent VPN configurations, in which two FortiGate units create a VPN tunnel between two separate private networks transparently. The following topics are included in this section:

- Configuration overview
- Configure the VPN peers

Configuration overview

In transparent mode, all interfaces of the FortiGate unit except the management interface (which by default is assigned IP address 10.10.10.1/255.255.255.0) are invisible at the network layer. Typically, when a FortiGate unit runs in transparent mode, different network segments are connected to the FortiGate interfaces. Figure 25 shows the management station on the same subnet. The management station can connect to the FortiGate unit directly through the web-based manager.

Figure 25: Management station on internal network

An edge router typically provides a public connection to the Internet and one interface of the FortiGate unit is connected to the router. If the FortiGate unit is managed from an external address (see Figure 26 on page 176), the router must translate (NAT) a routable address to direct management traffic to the FortiGate management interface.
In a transparent VPN configuration, two FortiGate units create a VPN tunnel between two separate private networks transparently. All traffic between the two networks is encrypted and protected by FortiGate security policies.

Both FortiGate units may be running in transparent mode, or one could be running in transparent mode and the other running in NAT mode. If the remote peer is running in NAT mode, it must have a static public IP address.

Encrypted packets from the remote VPN peer are addressed to the management interface of the local FortiGate unit. If the local FortiGate unit can reach the VPN peer locally, a static route to the VPN peer must be added to the routing table on the local FortiGate unit. If the VPN peer connects through the Internet, encrypted packets from the local FortiGate unit must be routed to the edge router instead. For information about how to add a static route to the FortiGate routing table, see the Advanced Routing Guide.

In the example configuration shown in Figure 26, Network Address Translation (NAT) is enabled on the router. When an encrypted packet from the remote VPN peer arrives at the router through the Internet, the router performs inbound NAT and forwards the packet to the FortiGate unit. Refer to the software supplier’s documentation to configure the router.

If you want to configure a VPN between two FortiGate units running in transparent mode, each unit must have an independent connection to a router that acts as a gateway to the Internet, and both units must be on separate networks that have a different address space. When the two networks linked by the VPN tunnel have different address spaces (see Figure 27 on page 177), at least one router must separate the two FortiGate units, unless the packets can be redirected using ICMP (see Figure 28 on page 177).
Figure 27: Link between two FortiGate units in transparent mode

In Figure 28, interface C behind the router is the default gateway for both FortiGate units. Packets that cannot be delivered on Network_1 are routed to interface C by default. Similarly, packets that cannot be delivered on Network_2 are routed to interface C. In this case, the router must be configured to redirect packets destined for Network_1 to interface A and redirect packets destined for Network_2 to interface B.

Figure 28: ICMP redirecting packets to two FortiGate units in transparent mode
If there are additional routers behind the FortiGate unit (see Figure 29 on page 178) and the destination IP address of an inbound packet is on a network behind one of those routers, the FortiGate routing table must include routes to those networks. For example, in Figure 29, the FortiGate unit must be configured with static routes to interfaces A and B in order to forward packets to Network_1 and Network_2 respectively.

**Figure 29: Destinations on remote networks behind internal routers**

---

**Transparent VPN infrastructure requirements**

- The local FortiGate unit must be operating in transparent mode.
- The management IP address of the local FortiGate unit specifies the local VPN gateway. The management IP address is considered a static IP address for the local VPN peer.
- If the local FortiGate unit is managed through the Internet, or if the VPN peer connects through the Internet, the edge router must be configured to perform inbound NAT and forward management traffic and/or encrypted packets to the FortiGate unit.
- If the remote peer is operating in NAT mode, it must have a static public IP address.

A FortiGate unit operating in transparent mode requires the following basic configuration to operate as a node on the IP network:

- The unit must have sufficient routing information to reach the management station.
- For any traffic to reach external destinations, a default static route to an edge router that forwards packets to the Internet must be present in the FortiGate routing table.
- When all of the destinations are located on the external network, the FortiGate unit may route packets using a single default static route. If the network topology is more complex, one or more static routes in addition to the default static route may be required in the FortiGate routing table.

Only policy-based VPN configurations are possible in transparent mode.
Before you begin

An IPsec VPN definition links a gateway with a tunnel and an IPsec policy. If your network topology includes more than one virtual domain, you must choose components that were created in the same virtual domain. Therefore, before you define a transparent VPN configuration, choose an appropriate virtual domain in which to create the required interfaces, security policies, and VPN components. For more information, see the Virtual Domains Guide.

Configure the VPN peers

1 The local VPN peer need to operate in transparent mode.

To determine if your FortiGate unit is in transparent mode, go to System > Dashboard > Status to the System Information widget. Select [change]. Select transparent for the Operation Mode— two new fields will appear to enter the Management IP/Netmask, and the Default Gateway.

In transparent mode, the FortiGate unit is invisible to the network. All of its interfaces are on the same subnet and share the same IP address. You only have to configure a management IP address so that you can make configuration changes.

The remote VPN peer may operate in NAT mode or transparent mode.

2 At the local FortiGate unit, define the phase 1 parameters needed to establish a secure connection with the remote peer. See “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Select Advanced and enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote Gateway</th>
<th>Select Static IP Address.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Type the IP address of the public interface to the remote peer. If the remote peer is a FortiGate unit running in transparent mode, type the IP address of the remote management interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select Nat-traversal, and type a value into the Keepalive Frequency field. These settings protect the headers of encrypted packets from being altered by external NAT devices and ensure that NAT address mappings do not change while the VPN tunnel is open. For more information, see “NAT traversal” on page 52 and “NAT keepalive frequency” on page 53.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer. See “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57.

| Phase 1         | Select the set of phase 1 parameters that you defined for the remote peer. The name of the remote peer can be selected from the Static IP Address list. |
Configure the VPN peers

4 Define the source and destination addresses of the IP packets that are to be transported through the VPN tunnel. See “Defining policy addresses” on page 63. Enter these settings in particular:

- For the originating address (source address), enter the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the local peer network, for example, 10.10.10.0/24. This address needs to be a range to allow traffic from your network through the tunnel. Optionally select any for this address.
- For the remote address (destination address), enter the IP address and netmask of the private network behind the remote peer (for example, 192.168.10.0/24). If the remote peer is a FortiGate unit running in transparent mode, enter the IP address of the remote management interface instead.

5 Define an IPsec security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the local interface to the internal (private) network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the source address that you defined in Step 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the interface to the edge router. When you configure the IPsec security policy on a remote peer that operates in NAT mode, you select the public interface to the external (public) network instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>Select the destination address that you defined in Step 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>IPSEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Tunnel</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 2 tunnel configuration that you created in Step 3. Select Allow inbound to enable traffic from the remote network to initiate the tunnel. Select Allow outbound to enable traffic from the local network to initiate the tunnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Place the policy in the policy list above any other policies having similar source and destination addresses.

7 Define another IPsec security policy to permit communications between the source and destination addresses in the opposite direction. This security policy and the previous one form a bi-directional policy pair. See “Defining VPN security policies” on page 64. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface to the edge router. When you configure the IPsec security policy on a remote peer that operates in NAT mode, you select the public interface to the external (public) network instead.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>Select the destination address that you defined in Step 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the local interface to the internal (private) network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Repeat this procedure at the remote FortiGate unit to create bidirectional security policies. Use the local interface and address information local to the remote FortiGate unit.

For more information on transparent mode, see the System Administration Guide.
Manual-key configurations

This section explains how to manually define cryptographic keys to establish an IPsec VPN, either policy-based or route-based.

For more information on web-based manual key configuration, see “Manual Key” on page 35.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Configuration overview
- Specify the manual keys for creating a tunnel

Configuration overview

You manually define cryptographic keys where prior knowledge of the encryption and/or authentication key is required (that is, one of the VPN peers requires a specific IPsec encryption and/or authentication key). In this case, you do not specify IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 parameters; you define manual keys by going to VPN > IPsec > Manual Key.

If one VPN peer uses specific authentication and encryption keys to establish a tunnel, both VPN peers must be configured to use the same encryption and authentication algorithms and keys.

It may not be safe or practical to define manual keys because network administrators must be trusted to keep the keys confidential, and propagating changes to remote VPN peers in a secure manner may be difficult.

It is essential that both VPN peers be configured with matching encryption and authentication algorithms, matching authentication and encryption keys, and complementary Security Parameter Index (SPI) settings.

You can define either the encryption or the authentication as NULL (disabled), but not both.

Each SPI identifies a Security Association (SA). The value is placed in ESP datagrams to link the datagrams to the SA. When an ESP datagram is received, the recipient refers to the SPI to determine which SA applies to the datagram. An SPI must be specified manually for each SA. Because an SA applies to communication in one direction only, you must specify two SPIs per configuration (a local SPI and a remote SPI) to cover bidirectional communications between two VPN peers.

If you are not familiar with the security policies, SAs, selectors, and SA databases for your particular installation, do not attempt the following procedure without qualified assistance.
Specify the manual keys for creating a tunnel

Specify the manual keys for creating a tunnel as follows:

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Manual Key and select Create New.
2. Include appropriate entries as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type a name for the VPN tunnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local SPI</strong></td>
<td>Type a hexadecimal number (up to 8 characters, 0-9, a-f) that represents the SA that handles outbound traffic on the local FortiGate unit. The valid range is from 0x100 to 0xffffffff. This value must match the <strong>Remote SPI</strong> value in the manual key configuration at the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote SPI</strong></td>
<td>Type a hexadecimal number (up to 8 characters, 0-9, a-f) that represents the SA that handles inbound traffic on the local FortiGate unit. The valid range is from 0x100 to 0xffffffff. This value must match the <strong>Local SPI</strong> value in the manual key configuration at the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote Gateway</strong></td>
<td>Type the IP address of the public interface to the remote peer. The address identifies the recipient of ESP datagrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local Interface</strong></td>
<td>Select the name of the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface to which the IPsec tunnel will be bound. The FortiGate unit obtains the IP address of the interface from System &gt; Network &gt; Interface settings. This is available in NAT mode only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Encryption Algorithm</strong></td>
<td>Select one of the following symmetric-key encryption algorithms:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• DES — Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 3DES — Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AES128 — A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AES192 — A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AES256 — A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Encryption Key</strong></td>
<td>If you selected:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• DES, type a 16-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 3DES, type a 48-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f) separated into three segments of 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AES128, type a 32-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f) separated into two segments of 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AES192, type a 48-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f) separated into three segments of 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AES256, type a 64-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f) separated into four segments of 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Authentication Algorithm</strong></td>
<td>Select one of the following message digests:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MD5 — Message Digest 5 algorithm, which produces a 128-bit message digest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SHA1 — Secure Hash Algorithm 1, which produces a 160-bit message digest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Authentication Key

If you selected:
- MD5, type a 32-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f) separated into two segments of 16 characters.
- SHA1, type 40-character hexadecimal number (0-9, a-f) separated into one segment of 16 characters and a second segment of 24 characters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPsec Interface Mode</th>
<th>Select to create a route-based VPN. A virtual IPsec interface is created on the Local Interface that you selected. This option is available only in NAT mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

3 Select OK.
This chapter describes how to configure your FortiGate unit’s IPv6 IPsec VPN functionality. To access IPv6 functionality through the web-based manager, go to System Admin > Settings and enable IPv6 in the section, Display Options on GUI.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Overview of IPv6 IPsec support
- Configuring IPv6 IPsec VPNs
- Site-to-site IPv6 over IPv6 VPN example
- Site-to-site IPv4 over IPv6 VPN example
- Site-to-site IPv6 over IPv4 VPN example

### Overview of IPv6 IPsec support

FortiOS supports route-based IPv6 IPsec, but not policy-based. This section describes how IPv6 IPsec support differs from IPv4 IPsec support. FortiOS 4.0 MR3 is Pv6 Ready Logo Program Phase 2 certified.

Where both the gateways and the protected networks use IPv6 addresses, sometimes called IPv6 over IPv6, you can create either an auto-keyed or manually-keyed VPN. You can combine IPv6 and IPv4 addressing in an auto-keyed VPN in the following ways:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPv4 over IPv6</th>
<th>The VPN gateways have IPv6 addresses. The protected networks have IPv4 addresses. The phase 2 configurations at either end use IPv4 selectors.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 over IPv4</td>
<td>The VPN gateways have IPv4 addresses. The protected networks use IPv6 addresses. The phase 2 configurations at either end use IPv6 selectors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compared with IPv4 IPsec VPN functionality, there are some limitations:

- Except for IPv6 over IPv4, remote gateways with Dynamic DNS are not supported. This is because FortiOS 3.0 does not support IPv6 DNS.
- You cannot use RSA certificates in which the common name (cn) is a domain name that resolves to an IPv6 address. This is because FortiOS 3.0 does not support IPv6 DNS.
- DHCP over IPsec is not supported, because FortiOS 3.0 does not support IPv6 DHCP.
- Selectors cannot be firewall address names. Only IP address, address range and subnet are supported.
- Redundant IPv6 tunnels are not supported.

### Certificates

On a VPN with IPv6 phase 1 configuration, you can authenticate using VPN certificates in which the common name (cn) is an IPv6 address. The cn-type keyword of the user peer command has an option, ipv6, to support this.
Configuring IPv6 IPsec VPNs

Configuration of an IPv6 IPsec VPN follows the same sequence as for an IPv4 route-based VPN: phase 1 settings, phase 2 settings, security policies and routing.

To access IPv6 functionality through the web-based manager, go to System Admin > Settings and enable IPv6 in the section, Display Options on GUI.

Phase 1 configuration

In the web-based manager, you define the Phase 1 as IPv6 in the Advanced settings. Enable the IPv6 Version check box. You can then enter an IPv6 address for the remote gateway.

In the CLI, you define an IPsec phase 1 configuration as IPv6 by setting ip-version to 6. Its default value is 4. Then, the local-gw and remote-gw keywords are hidden and the corresponding local-gw6 and remote-gw6 keywords are available. The values for local-gw6 and remote-gw6 must be IPv6 addresses. For example:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit tunnel6
  set ip-version 6
  set remote-gw6 0:123:4567::1234
  set interface port3
  set proposal 3des-md5
end
```

Phase 2 configuration

To create an IPv6 IPsec phase 2 configuration in the web-based manager, you need to define IPv6 selectors in the Advanced settings. Change the default "0.0.0.0/0" address for Source address and Destination address to the IPv6 value "::/0". If needed, enter specific IPv6 addresses, address ranges or subnet addresses in these fields.

In the CLI, set src-addr-type and dst-addr-type to ip6, range6 or subnet6 to specify IPv6 selectors. By default, zero selectors are entered, "::/0" for the subnet6 address type, for example. The simplest IPv6 phase 2 configuration looks like this:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
edit tunnel6_p2
  set phasename tunnel6
  set proposal 3des-md5
  set src-addr-type subnet6
  set dst-addr-type subnet6
end
```

Security policies

To complete the VPN configuration, you need a security policy in each direction to permit traffic between the protected network’s port and the IPsec interface. You need IPv6 policies unless the VPN is IPv4 over IPv6.

Routing

Appropriate routing is needed for both the IPsec packets and the encapsulated traffic within them. You need a route, which could be the default route, to the remote VPN gateway via the appropriate interface. You also need a route to the remote protected network via the IPsec interface.
To create a static route in the web-based manager, go to **Router > Static > Static Route**. Select the drop-down arrow on the Create New button and select IPv6 Route. Enter the information and select OK. In the CLI, use the `router static6` command. For example, where the remote network is fec0:0000:0000:0004::/64 and the IPsec interface is toB:

```plaintext
config router static6
edit 1
  set device port2
  set dst 0::/0
next
edit 2
  set device toB
  set dst fec0:0000:0000:0004::/64
next
end
```

If the VPN is IPv4 over IPv6, the route to the remote protected network is an IPv4 route. If the VPN is IPv6 over IPv4, the route to the remote VPN gateway is an IPv4 route.

### Site-to-site IPv6 over IPv6 VPN example

In this example, computers on IPv6-addressed private networks communicate securely over public IPv6 infrastructure.

To access IPv6 functionality through the web-based manager, go to **System Admin > Settings** and enable **IPv6** in the section, **Display Options on GUI**.

**Figure 30: Example IPv6-over-IPv6 VPN topology**

Configure FortiGate A interfaces

Port 2 connects to the public network and port 3 connects to the local network.

```plaintext
config system interface
edit port2
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0:0001:209:0ff:fe83:25f2/64
next
```
edit port3
config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0::0000:209:0ff:fe83:25f3/64
end
next
end

**Configure FortiGate A IPsec settings**

The phase 1 configuration creates a virtual IPsec interface on port 2 and sets the remote gateway to the public IP address FortiGate B. This configuration is the same as for an IPv4 route-based VPN, except that `ip-version` is set to 6 and the `remote-gw6` keyword is used to specify an IPv6 remote gateway address.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit toB
    set ip-version 6
    set interface port2
    set remote-gw6 fec0:0000:0000:0003:209:0ff:fe83:25c7
    set dpd enable
    set psksecret maryhadalittlelamb
    set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
end
```

By default, phase 2 selectors are set to accept all subnet addresses for source and destination. The default setting for `src-addr-type` and `dst-addr-type` is `subnet`. The IPv6 equivalent is `subnet6`. The default subnet addresses are 0.0.0.0/0 for IPv4, ::/0 for IPv6.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
edit toB2
    set phase1name toB
    set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
    set pfs enable
    set replay enable
    set src-addr-type subnet6
    set dst-addr-type subnet6
end
```

**Configure FortiGate A security policies**

Security policies are required to allow traffic between port3 and the IPsec interface toB in each direction. The address `all6` must be defined using the `firewall address6` command as ::/0.

```
config firewall policy6
edit 1
    set srcintf port3
    set dstintf toB
    set srcaddr all6
    set dstaddr all6
    set action accept
    set service ANY
    set schedule always
next
edit 2
    set srcintf toB
    set dstintf port3
```
set srcaddr all6
set dstaddr all6
set action accept
set service ANY
set schedule always
end

Configure FortiGate A routing

This simple example requires just two static routes. Traffic to the protected network behind FortiGate B is routed via the virtual IPsec interface toB. A default route sends all IPv6 traffic out on port2.

```fortigate
config router static6
edit 1
set device port2
set dst 0::/0
next
edit 2
set device toB
set dst fec0:0000:0000:0004::/64
end
```

Configure FortiGate B

The configuration of FortiGate B is very similar to that of FortiGate A. A virtual IPsec interface toA is configured on port2 and its remote gateway is the public IP address of FortiGate A. Security policies enable traffic to pass between the private network and the IPsec interface. Routing ensures traffic for the private network behind FortiGate A goes through the VPN and that all IPv6 packets are routed to the public network.

```fortigate
config system interface
edit port2
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0::0003:209:0ff:fe83:25c7/64
  end
next
edit port3
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0::0004:209:0ff:fe83:2569/64
  end
end
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit toA
  set ip-version 6
  set interface port2
  set remote-gw6 fec0:0000:0000:0001:209:0ff:fe83:25f2
  set dpd enable
  set psksecret maryhadalittlelamb
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
edit toA2
  set phaselnname toA
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
  set pfs enable
  set replay enable
```
Site-to-site IPv4 over IPv6 VPN example

In this example, two private networks with IPv4 addressing communicate securely over IPv6 infrastructure.

Figure 31: Example IPv4-over-IPv6 VPN topology
Configure FortiGate A interfaces

Port 2 connects to the IPv6 public network and port 3 connects to the IPv4 LAN.

```plaintext
config system interface
edit port2
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0::0001:209:0fff:fe83:25f2/64
  end
next
edit port3
  set 192.168.2.1/24
end
```

Configure FortiGate A IPsec settings

The phase 1 configuration is the same as in the IPv6 over IPv6 example.

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit toB
  set ip-version 6
  set interface port2
  set remote-gw6 fec0:0000:0000:0003:209:0fff:fe83:25c7
  set dpd enable
  set psksecret maryhadalittlelamb
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-shal
end
```

The phase 2 configuration is the same as you would use for an IPv4 VPN. By default, phase 2 selectors are set to accept all subnet addresses for source and destination.

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
edit toB2
  set phasename toB
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-shal
  set pfs enable
  set replay enable
end
```

Configure FortiGate A security policies

Security policies are required to allow traffic between port3 and the IPsec interface toB in each direction. These are IPv4 security policies.

```plaintext
config firewall policy
edit 1
  set srcintf port3
  set dstintf toB
  set srcaddr all
  set dstaddr all
  set action accept
  set service ANY
  set schedule always
next
edit 2
  set srcintf toB
  set dstintf port3
  set srcaddr all
  set dstaddr all
```
set action accept
set service ANY
set schedule always
end

Configure FortiGate A routing

This simple example requires just two static routes. Traffic to the protected network behind FortiGate B is routed via the virtual IPsec interface toB using an IPv4 static route. A default route sends all IPv6 traffic, including the IPv6 IPsec packets, out on port2.

```
config router static6
edit 1
  set device port2
  set dst 0::/0
next
edit 2
  set device toB
  set dst 192.168.3.0/24
end
```

Configure FortiGate B

The configuration of FortiGate B is very similar to that of FortiGate A. A virtual IPsec interface toA is configured on port2 and its remote gateway is the public IP address of FortiGate A. The IPsec phase 2 configuration has IPv4 selectors.

IPv4 security policies enable traffic to pass between the private network and the IPsec interface. An IPv4 static route ensures traffic for the private network behind FortiGate A goes through the VPN and an IPv6 static route ensures that all IPv6 packets are routed to the public network.

```
config system interface
edit port2
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0::0003:fe83:25c7/64
  end
next
edit port3
  set 192.168.3.1/24
end
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit toA
  set ip-version 6
  set interface port2
  set remote-gw6 fec0:0000:0000:0001:209:0fff:fe83:25f2
  set dpd enable
  set psksecret maryhadalittlelamb
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
edit toA2
  set phasename toA
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
  set pfs enable
  set replay enable
end
```
config firewall policy
edit 1
    set srcintf port3
    set dstintf toA
    set srcaddr all
    set dstaddr all
    set action accept
    set service ANY
    set schedule always
next
edit 2
    set srcintf toA
    set dstintf port3
    set srcaddr all
    set dstaddr all
    set action accept
    set service ANY
    set schedule always
end
config router static6
edit 1
    set device port2
    set dst 0::/0
next
edit 2
    set device toA
    set dst 192.168.2.0/24
end

Site-to-site IPv6 over IPv4 VPN example

In this example, IPv6-addressed private networks communicate securely over IPv4 public infrastructure.

Figure 32: Example IPv6-over-IPv4 VPN topology

Configure FortiGate A interfaces

Port 2 connects to the IPv4 public network and port 3 connects to the IPv6 LAN.
config system interface
  edit port2
    set 10.0.0.1/24
  next
edit port3
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0:0001:209:0ff:fe83:25f3/64
end

Configure FortiGate A IPsec settings

The phase 1 configuration uses IPv4 addressing.

config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit toB
    set interface port2
    set remote-gw 10.0.1.1
    set dpd enable
    set psksecret maryhadalittlelamb
    set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
end

The phase 2 configuration uses IPv6 selectors. By default, phase 2 selectors are set to accept all subnet addresses for source and destination. The default setting for src-addr-type and dst-addr-type is subnet. The IPv6 equivalent is subnet6. The default subnet addresses are 0.0.0.0/0 for IPv4, ::/0 for IPv6.

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
  edit toB2
    set phasename toB
    set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
    set pfs enable
    set replay enable
    set src-addr-type subnet6
    set dst-addr-type subnet6
end

Configure FortiGate A security policies

IPv6 security policies are required to allow traffic between port3 and the IPsec interface toB in each direction. The address all6 must be defined using the firewall address6 command as ::/0.

config firewall policy6
  edit 1
    set srcintf port3
    set dstintf toB
    set srcaddr all6
    set dstaddr all6
    set action accept
    set service ANY
    set schedule always
  next
  edit 2
    set srcintf toB
    set dstintf port3
    set srcaddr all6
    set dstaddr all6
Configure FortiGate A routing

This simple example requires just two static routes. Traffic to the protected network behind FortiGate B is routed via the virtual IPsec interface toB using an IPv6 static route. A default route sends all IPv4 traffic, including the IPv4 IPsec packets, out on port2.

```
set action accept
set service ANY
set schedule always
end
```

```
config router static6
edit 1
  set device toB
  set dst fec0:0000:0000:0004::/64
end
config router static
edit 1
  set device port2
  set dst 0.0.0.0/0
  set gateway 10.0.0.254
end
```

Configure FortiGate B

The configuration of FortiGate B is very similar to that of FortiGate A. A virtual IPsec interface toA is configured on port2 and its remote gateway is the IPv4 public IP address of FortiGate A. The IPsec phase 2 configuration has IPv6 selectors.

IPv6 security policies enable traffic to pass between the private network and the IPsec interface. An IPv6 static route ensures traffic for the private network behind FortiGate A goes through the VPN and an IPv4 static route ensures that all IPv4 packets are routed to the public network.

```
config system interface
edit port2
  set 10.0.1.1/24
next
edit port3
  config ipv6
    set ip6-address fec0::0004:209:0fff:fe83:2569/64
end
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit toA
  set interface port2
  set remote-gw 10.0.0.1
  set dpd enable
  set psksecret maryhadalittlelamb
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
edit toA2
  set phasename toA
  set proposal 3des-md5 3des-sha1
  set pfs enable
  set replay enable
  set src-addr-type subnet6
```
set dst-addr-type subnet6
end
config firewall policy6
edit 1
set srcintf port3
set dstintf toA
set srcaddr all6
set dstaddr all6
set action accept
set service ANY
set schedule always
next
edit 2
set srcintf toA
set dstintf port3
set srcaddr all6
set dstaddr all6
set action accept
set service ANY
set schedule always
end
config router static6
edit 1
set device toA
set dst fec0::0000:0000::/64
end
config router static
edit 1
set device port2
set gateway 10.0.1.254
end
L2TP and IPsec (Microsoft VPN)

This section describes how to set up a VPN that is compatible with the Microsoft Windows native VPN, which is Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) with IPsec encryption. The following topics are included in this section:

- Overview
- Assumptions
- Configuring the FortiGate unit
- Configuring the Windows PC
- Troubleshooting

Overview

The topology of a VPN for Microsoft Windows dialup clients is very similar to the topology for FortiClient Endpoint Security clients.

**Figure 33: Example FortiGate VPN configuration with Microsoft clients**

For users, the difference is that instead of installing and using the FortiClient application, they configure a network connection using the software built into the Microsoft Windows operating system. Starting in FortiOS 4.0 MR2, you can configure a FortiGate unit to work with unmodified Microsoft VPN client software.

Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP)

L2TP is a tunneling protocol published in 1999 that is used with VPNs, as the name suggests. Microsoft Windows operating system has a built-in L2TP client starting since Windows 2000. Mac OS X 10.3 system and higher also have a built-in client.
Assumptions

The following assumptions have been made for this example:

- L2TP protocol traffic is allowed through network firewalls (TCP and UDP port 1701)
- User has Microsoft Windows 2000 or higher — a Windows version that supports L2TP

Configuring the FortiGate unit

To configure the FortiGate unit, you need to:

- configure LT2P users and firewall user group;
- configure the L2TP VPN, including the IP address range it assigns to clients;
- configure an IPsec VPN with encryption and authentication settings that match the Microsoft VPN client;
- configure security policies.

Configuring LT2P users and firewall user group

Remote users must be authenticated before they can request services and/or access network resources through the VPN. The authentication process can use a password defined on the FortiGate unit or an established external authentication mechanism such as RADIUS or LDAP.

Creating user accounts

You need to create user accounts and then add these users to a firewall user group to be used for L2TP authentication. The Microsoft VPN client can automatically send the user’s Windows network logon credentials. You might want to use these for their L2TP user name and password.

To create a user account - web-based manager

1. Go to User > User > User and select Create New.
2. Enter the User Name.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Select Password and enter the user’s assigned password.
   - Select LDAP, RADIUS, or TACACS+ and select the authentication server from the list. The authentication server must be already configured on the FortiGate unit.
4. Select OK.
To create a user account - CLI

To create a user account called user1 with the password 123_user, you would enter:

config user local
    edit user1
        set type password
        set passwd "123_user"
        set status enable
    end

Creating a user group

When clients connect using the L2TP-over-IPsec VPN, the FortiGate unit checks their credentials against the user group you specify for L2TP authentication. You need to create a firewall user group to use for this purpose.

To create a user group - web-based manager

1. Go to User > User Group > User Group, select Create New, and enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type or edit the user group name (for example, L2TP_group).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Select Firewall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Users/Groups</td>
<td>The list of Local users, RADIUS servers, LDAP servers, TACACS+ servers, or PKI users that can be added to the user group. To add a member to this list, select the name and then select the right arrow button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>The list of Local users, RADIUS servers, LDAP servers, TACACS+ servers, or PKI users that belong to the user group. To remove a member, select the name and then select the left arrow button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Select OK.

To create a user group - CLI

To create the user group L2TP_group and add members User_1, User_2, and User_3, you would enter:

config user group
    edit L2TP_group
        set group-type firewall
        set member User_1 User_2 User_3
    end

Configuring L2TP

You can only configure L2TP settings in the CLI. As well as enabling L2TP, you set the range of IP address values that are assigned to L2TP clients and specify the user group that can access the VPN. For example, to allow access to users in the L2TP_group and assign them addresses in the range 192.168.0.50 to 192.168.0.59, you would enter:

config vpn l2tp
    set sip 192.168.0.50
    set eip 192.168.0.59
    set status enable
    set usgrp "L2TP_group"
end
One of the security policies for the L2TP over IPsec VPN uses the client address range, so you need also need to create a firewall address for that range. For example,

```
config firewall address
edit L2TPclients
  set type iprange
  set end-ip 192.168.6.88
  set start-ip 192.168.6.85
end
```

Alternatively, you could define this range in the web-based manager.

**Configuring IPsec**

The Microsoft VPN client uses IPsec for encryption. The configuration needed on the FortiGate unit is the same as for any other IPsec VPN with the following exceptions.
- Transport mode is used instead of tunnel mode.
- The encryption and authentication proposals must be compatible with the Microsoft client.

L2TP over IPsec is supported on the FortiGate unit using policy-based, not route-based configurations.

**Configuring phase 1 - web-based manager**

1. Go to **VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE)** and select *Create Phase 1*.
2. Enter the following information and then select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name for this VPN, dialup_p1 for example.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Dialup User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the network interface that connects to the Internet. For example, port1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Main (ID protection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key. This key must also be entered in the Microsoft VPN client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select <em>Advanced</em> to enter the following information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>This must <strong>not</strong> be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1 Proposal</td>
<td>Enter the following Encryption/Authentication pairs: AES256-MD5, 3DES-SHA1, AES192-SHA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DH Group</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT Traversal</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Peer Detection</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring phase 1 - CLI

To create a phase 1 configuration called dialup_p1 on a FortiGate unit that has port1 connected to the Internet, you would enter:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
edit dialup_p1
set type dynamic
set interface port1
set mode main
set psksecret ********
set proposal aes256-md5 3des-sha1 aes192-sha1
set dhgrp 2
set nattraversal enable
set dpd enable
end
```

Configuring phase 2 - web-based manager

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 2.
2. Enter the following information and then select OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name for this phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select Advanced to enter the following information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2 Proposal</td>
<td>Enter the following Encryption/Authentication pairs: AES256-MD5, 3DES-SHA1, AES192-SHA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable replay</td>
<td>Enable replay detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detection</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable perfect forward secrecy (PFS)</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Make this a transport-mode VPN. You must use the CLI to do this. If your phase 2 name is dialup_p2, you would enter:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2
edit dialup_p2
set encapsulation transport-mode
end
```

Configuring phase 2 - CLI

To configure a phase 2 to work with your phase_1 configuration, you would enter:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2
edit dialup_p2
set phase1name dialup_p1
set proposal aes256-md5 3des-sha1 aes192-sha1
set replay enable
set pfs disable
set keylifeseconds 3600
set encapsulation transport-mode
end
```
Configuring security policies

The security policies required for L2TP over IPsec VPN are:

- an IPSEC policy, as you would create for any policy-based IPsec VPN
- a regular ACCEPT policy to allow traffic from the L2TP clients to access the protected network

Configuring the IPSEC security policy - web-based manager

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy and select Create New.
2. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Source Address</th>
<th>Destination Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Destination Address</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>VPN Tunnel</th>
<th>Allow inbound</th>
<th>Allow outbound</th>
<th>UTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>Select the FortiGate unit’s public interface.</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>IPSEC</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you created. For example, dialup_p1. See “Configuring IPsec” on page 202.</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>Optional settings for UTM features.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   |
   | config firewall policy
   | edit 0
   |   set srcintf port2
   |   set dstintf port1
   |   set srcaddr all
   |   set dstaddr all
   |   set action ipsec
   |   set schedule always
   |   set service ANY
   |   set inbound enable
   |   set outbound enable
   |   set vpntunnel dialup_p1
   | end

Configuring the IPSEC security policy - CLI

If your VPN tunnel (phase 1) is called dialup_p1, your protected network is on port2, and your public interface is port1, you would enter:
Configuring the ACCEPT security policy - web-based manager

1. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy and select Create New.
2. Enter the following information and then select OK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the FortiGate unit’s public interface.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address</td>
<td>Select the firewall address that you defined for the L2TP clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTM</td>
<td>Optionally, select UTM feature profiles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring the ACCEPT security policy - CLI

If your public interface is port1, your protected network is on port2, and L2TPclients is the address range that L2TP clients use, you would enter:

```
config firewall policy
edit 0
   set srcintf port1
   set dstintf port2
   set srcaddr L2TPclients
   set dstaddr all
   set action accept
   set schedule always
   set service ANY
end
```

Configuring the Windows PC

Configuration of the Windows PC for a VPN connection to the FortiGate unit consists of the following:

- In Network Connections, configure a Virtual Private Network connection to the FortiGate unit.
- Ensure that the IPSEC service is running.
- Ensure that IPsec has not been disabled for the VPN client. It may have been disabled to make the Microsoft VPN compatible with an earlier version of FortiOS.

The instructions in this section are based on Windows XP SP3. Other versions of Windows may vary slightly.

To configure the network connection

1. Open Network Connections.
   This is available through the Control Panel.
2. Double-click New Connection Wizard and Select Next.
3. Select Connect to the network at my workplace.
4. Select Next.
5 Select *Virtual Private Network connection* and then select *Next*.
6 In the *Company Name* field, enter a name for the connection and then select *Next*.
7 Select *Do not dial the initial connection* and then select *Next*.
8 Enter the public IP address or FQDN of the FortiGate unit and then select *Next*.
9 Optionally, select *Add a shortcut to this connection to my desktop*.
10 Select *Finish*.
   The *Connect* dialog opens on the desktop.
11 Select *Properties* and then select the *Security* tab.
12 Select IPSec Settings.
13 Select *Use pre-shared key for authentication*, enter the preshared key that you configured for your VPN, and select *OK*.
14 Select *OK*.

**To check that the IPSEC service is running**
1 Open *Administrative Tools*.
   This is available through the Control Panel.
2 Double-click *Services*.
3 Look for IPSEC Services. Confirm that the *Startup Type* is *Automatic* and *Status* is set to *Started*. If needed, double-click *IPSEC Services* to change these settings.

**To check that IPsec has not been disabled**
1 Select *Start > Run*.
2 Enter regedit and select OK.
3 Find the Registry key
   `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\RasMan\Parameters`
4 If there is a ProhibitIPSec value, it must be set to 0.

**Troubleshooting**

This section describes some checks and tools you can use to resolve issues with L2TP-over-IPsec VPNs.

This section includes:
- Quick checks
- Mac OS X and L2TP
- Setting up logging
- Understanding the log messages
- Using the FortiGate unit debug commands
Quick checks

The table below is a list of common L2TP over IPsec VPN problems and the possible solutions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>What to check</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPsec tunnel does not come up.</td>
<td>Check the logs to determine whether the failure is in Phase 1 or Phase 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check the settings, including encapsulation setting, which must be transport-mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check the user password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Confirm that the user is a member of the user group assigned to L2TP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On the Windows PC, check that the IPsec service is running and has not been disabled. See “Configuring the Windows PC” on page 205.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel connects, but there is no communication.</td>
<td>Did you create an ACCEPT security policy from the public network to the protected network for the L2TP clients? See “Configuring security policies” on page 204.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mac OS X and L2TP

FortiOS allows L2TP connections with empty AVP host names and therefore Mac OS X L2TP connections can connect to the FortiGate.

Prior to FortiOS 4.0 MR3, FortiOS refused L2TP connections with empty AVP host names in compliance with RFC 2661 and RFC 3931.

Setting up logging

L2TP logging must be enabled to record L2TP events. Alert email can be configured to report L2TP errors.

To configure FortiGate logging for L2TP over IPsec

2. Select Event Log.
3. Select the L2TP/PPTP/PPPoE service event and IPsec negotiation event check boxes.
4. Select Apply.

To configure FortiGate logging level

2. Select the Local Logging & Archiving check box.
3. Set Minimum log level to Information.
4. Select Apply.
To view FortiGate logs

2. Select the storage location if required.
3. After each attempt to start the L2TP over IPsec VPN, select Refresh to view any logged events.

Understanding the log messages

Successful startup of an L2TP over IPsec VPN follows a well-defined sequence. If you compare your logs to the sequence shown in Table 6, you will be able to determine at what stage your configuration is failing.

Table 6: Sequence of log messages for L2TP over IPsec VPN connection startup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Sub Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate progress IPsec phase 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate progress IPsec phase 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate progress IPsec phase 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate progress IPsec phase 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>37129</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate progress IPsec phase 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>37133</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>install_sa install IPsec SA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>37139</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>phase2-up IPsec phase 2 status change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>37138</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>tunnel-up IPsec connection status change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>37129</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate progress IPsec phase 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>37122</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate IPsec phase 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>31008</td>
<td>ppp</td>
<td>connect Client 172.20.120.151 control connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>started (id 743), assigned ip 192.168.6.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>29013</td>
<td>ppp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>29002</td>
<td>ppp</td>
<td>auth_succes User 'user1' using i2tp with authentic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>protocol MSCHAP_V2, succeeded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>31101</td>
<td>ppp</td>
<td>tunnel-up L2TP tunnel established</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table lists messages in top down chronological order. In the web-based manager log viewer, you need to read the messages from the bottom up. The newest message appears at the top of that list.

In Table 6, messages 1 through 4 show the IKE phase 1 negotiation stages that result in the creation of the Security Association (SA) shown in message 6. Phase 2 negotiation in messages 5, 9, 10 produce the tunnel-up condition reported in message 8.

With IPsec communication established, the L2TP connection is established (message 11), the pppd daemon starts (message 12), the user is authenticated (message 13), and the L2TP tunnel is now ready to use.
Using the FortiGate unit debug commands

To view debug output for IKE and L2TP

1. Start an SSH or Telnet session to your FortiGate unit.
2. Enter the following CLI commands
   - `diagnose debug application ike -1`
   - `diagnose debug application l2tp -1`
   - `diagnose debug enable`
3. Attempt to use the VPN and note the debug output in the SSH or Telnet session.
4. Enter the following command to reset debug settings to default:
   - `diagnose debug reset`

To use the packet sniffer

1. Start an SSH or Telnet session to your FortiGate unit.
2. Enter the following CLI command
   - `diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4`
3. Attempt to use the VPN and note the debug output.
4. Enter `Ctrl-C` to end sniffer operation.

Typical L2TP over IPsec session startup log entries - raw format

```
2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037127 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
    vd="root" msg="progress IPsec phase 1" action="negotiate" rem_ip=172.20.120.151
    loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500 out_intf="port1"
    cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbb680/d6a1009eb1de780" user="N/A" group="N/A"
    xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1" status=success
    init=remote mode=main dir=outbound stage=1 role=responder result=OK

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037127 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
    vd="root" msg="progress IPsec phase 1" action="negotiate" rem_ip=172.20.120.151
    loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500 out_intf="port1"
    cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbb680/d6a1009eb1de780" user="N/A" group="N/A"
    xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1_0" status=success
    init=remote mode=main dir=inbound stage=3 role=responder result=DONE
```
2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037129 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
vd="root" msg="progress IPsec phase 2" action="negotiate" rem_ip=172.20.120.151
loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500 out_intf="port1"
cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbf680/d6a1009eb1dde780" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1_0" status=success
init=remote mode=quick dir=outbound stage=1 role=resolver result=OK

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037123 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
vd="root" msg="negotiate IPsec phase 2" action="negotiate" rem_ip=172.20.120.151
loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500 out_intf="port1"
cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbf680/d6a1009eb1dde780" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1_0" role=responder
in_spi=61100fe2 out_spi=bd70fca1

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037138 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
vd="root" msg="IPsec connection status change" action="tunnel-up"
rem_ip=172.20.120.151 loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500
out_intf="port1" cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbf680/d6a1009eb1dde780" user="N/A"
group="N/A" xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1_0"
tunnel_ip=172.20.120.151 tunnel_id=1552003005 tunnel_type=ipsec duration=0 sent=0
rcvd=0 next_stat=0 tunnel=dialup_p1_0

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037139 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
vd="root" msg="IPsec phase 2 status change" action="phase2-up"
rem_ip=172.20.120.151 loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500
out_intf="port1" cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbf680/d6a1009eb1dde780" user="N/A"
group="N/A" xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1_0"
phase2_name=dialup_p2

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0101037122 type=event subtype=ipsec pri=notice
vd="root" msg="negotiate IPsec phase 2" action="negotiate" rem_ip=172.20.120.151
loc_ip=172.20.120.141 rem_port=500 loc_port=500 out_intf="port1"
cookies="5f6da1c0e4bbf680/d6a1009eb1dde780" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauth_user="N/A" xauth_group="N/A" vpn_tunnel="dialup_p1_0" status=success
role=responder esp_transform=ESP_3DES esp_auth=HMAC_SHA1

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0103031008 type=event subtype=ppp vd=root
pri=information action=connect status=succesmsg="Client 172.20.120.151 control
connection started (id 805), assigned ip 192.168.6.85"

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0103031001 type=event subtype=ppp vd=root
pri=notice msg="Client 172.20.120.151 control
tunnel established"

2010-01-11 16:39:58 log_id=0103031101 type=event subtype=ppp vd=root
pri=information action=tunnel-up tunnel_id=1645784497 tunnel_type=l2tp
remote_ip=172.20.120.151 tunnel_ip=192.168.6.85 user="user1" group="L2TPusers"
msg="L2TP tunnel established"
GRE over IPsec (Cisco VPN) configurations

This section describes how to configure a FortiGate VPN that is compatible with Cisco-style VPNs that use GRE in an IPsec tunnel.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Overview
- Configuring the FortiGate unit
- Configuring the Cisco router
- Troubleshooting

Overview

Cisco products that include VPN support often use Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) protocol tunnel over IPsec encryption. This chapter describes how to configure a FortiGate unit to work with this type of Cisco VPN.

Cisco VPNs can use either transport mode or tunnel mode IPsec. Before FortiOS 4.0 MR2, the FortiGate unit was compatible only with tunnel mode IPsec.

**Figure 34: Example FortiGate to Cisco GRE-over-IPsec VPN**

In this example, users on LAN-1 are provided access to LAN-2.
Configuring the FortiGate unit

There are several steps to the GRE-over-IPsec configuration:

- Enable overlapping subnets. This is needed because the IPsec and GRE tunnels will use the same addresses.
- Configure a route-based IPsec VPN on the external interface.
- Configure a GRE tunnel on the virtual IPsec interface. Set its local gateway and remote gateway addresses to match the local and remote gateways of the IPsec tunnel.
- Configure security policies to allow traffic to pass in both directions between the GRE virtual interface and the IPsec virtual interface.
- Configure security policies to allow traffic to pass in both directions between the protected network interface and the GRE virtual interface.
- Configure a static route to direct traffic destined for the network behind the Cisco router into the GRE-over-IPsec tunnel.

Enabling overlapping subnets

By default, each FortiGate unit network interface must be on a separate network. The configuration described in this chapter assigns an IPsec tunnel end point and the external interface to the same network. Enable subnet overlap as follows:

```bash
config system settings
  set allow-subnet-overlap enable
end
```

Configuring the IPsec VPN

A route-based VPN is required. It must use encryption and authentication algorithms compatible with the Cisco equipment to which it connects. In this chapter, preshared key authentication is shown.

To configure the IPsec VPN - web-based manager

1. Define the phase 1 configuration needed to establish a secure connection with the remote Cisco device. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify the VPN tunnel, tocisco for example. This is the name of the virtual IPsec interface. It appears in phase 2 configurations, security policies and the VPN monitor.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Static IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the Cisco device public interface. For example, 192.168.5.113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select the FortiGate unit’s public interface. For example, 172.20.120.141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Select Main (ID Protection).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key. It must match the preshared key on the Cisco device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select the Advanced button to see the following settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer. For compatibility with the Cisco router, Quick Mode Selectors must be entered, which includes specifying protocol 47, the GRE protocol. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify this phase 2 configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined in Step 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select Advanced to view the following fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2 Proposal</td>
<td>3DES-MD5 At least one proposal must match the settings on the Cisco unit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quick Mode Selector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Address</th>
<th>Enter the GRE local tunnel end IP address. For example 172.20.120.141</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Port</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address</td>
<td>Enter the GRE remote tunnel end IP address. For example 192.168.5.113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Port</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocol</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about these settings, see “Phase 2 parameters” on page 57.

3 If the Cisco device is configured to use transport mode IPsec, you need to use transport mode on the FortiGate VPN. You can configure this only in the CLI. In your phase 2 configuration, set `encapsulation` to `transport-mode` (default is `tunnel-mode`) as follows:

```plaintext
config vpn phase2-interface
  edit to_cisco_p2
    set encapsulation transport-mode
end
```

To configure the IPsec VPN - CLI

```plaintext
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit tocisco
    set interface port1
    set proposal 3des-shal aes128-shal
    set remote-gw 192.168.5.113
    set psksecret xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
  edit to_cisco_p2
    set phasename "tocisco"
    set proposal 3des-md5
    set encapsulation tunnel-mode // if tunnel mode
```
set encapsulation transport-mode // if transport mode
set protocol 47
set src-addr-type ip
set dst-start-ip 192.168.5.113
set src-start-ip 172.20.120.141
end

Adding IPsec tunnel end addresses

The Cisco configuration requires an address for its end of the IPsec tunnel. The
addresses are set to match the GRE gateway addresses. Use the CLI to set the
addresses, like this:

config system interface
  edit tocisco
    set ip 172.20.120.141 255.255.255.255
    set remote-ip 192.168.5.113
  end

Configuring the GRE tunnel

The GRE tunnel runs between the virtual IPsec public interface on the FortiGate unit and
the Cisco router. You must use the CLI to configure a GRE tunnel. In the example, you
would enter:

config system gre-tunnel
  edit gre1
    set interface tocisco
    set local-gw 172.20.120.141
    set remote-gw 192.168.5.113
  end

interface is the virtual IPsec interface, local-gw is the FortiGate unit public IP
address, and remote-gw is the remote Cisco device public IP address

Adding GRE tunnel end addresses

You will also need to add tunnel end addresses. The Cisco router configuration requires
an address for its end of the GRE tunnel. Using the CLI, enter tunnel end addresses that
are not used elsewhere on the FortiGate unit, like this:

config system interface
  edit gre1
    set ip 10.0.1.1 255.255.255.255
    set remote-ip 10.0.1.2
  end

Configuring security policies

Two sets of security policies are required:

- policies to allow traffic to pass in both directions between the GRE virtual interface
  and the IPsec virtual interface.
- policies to allow traffic to pass in both directions between the protected network
  interface and the GRE virtual interface.
To configure security policies - web-based manager

1. Define an ACCEPT security policy to permit communications between the protected network and the GRE tunnel:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the GRE tunnel virtual interface you configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. To permit the remote client to initiate communication, you need to define a security policy for communication in that direction:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the GRE tunnel virtual interface you configured.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Define a pair of ACCEPT security policies to permit traffic to flow between the GRE virtual interface and the IPsec virtual interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Interface/Zone</th>
<th>Select the GRE virtual interface. See “Configuring the GRE tunnel” on page 214.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Interface/Zone</td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface you created. See “Configuring the IPsec VPN” on page 212.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Address Name</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source Interface/Zone | Select the virtual IPsec interface you created. See “Configuring the IPsec VPN” on page 212. |
Source Address Name   | All                                                                               |
To configure security policies - CLI

```
config firewall policy
edit 1 // LAN to GRE tunnel
    set srcintf port2
    set dstintf gre1
    set srcaddr all
    set dstaddr all
    set action accept
    set schedule always
    set service ANY
next
edit 2 // GRE tunnel to LAN
    set srcintf gre1
    set dstintf port2
    set srcaddr all
    set dstaddr all
    set action accept
    set schedule always
    set service ANY
next
edit 3 // GRE tunnel to IPsec interface
    set srcintf "gre1"
    set dstintf "tocisco"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
next
edit 4 // IPsec interface to GRE tunnel
    set srcintf "tocisco"
    set dstintf "gre1"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ANY"
end
```
Configuring routing

Traffic destined for the network behind the Cisco router must be routed to the GRE tunnel. To do this, create a static route as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>Enter the IP address and netmask for the network behind the Cisco router. For example 10.21.101.0 255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Select the GRE virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Leave setting at default value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the CLI, using the example values, you would enter

```plaintext
config router static
dir 0
set device gre1
set dst 10.21.101.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

Configuring the Cisco router

Using Cisco IOS, you would configure the Cisco router as follows, using the addresses from the example:

```plaintext
config ter
crypto ipsec transform-set myset esp-3des esp-md5-hmac
no mode
exit
no ip access-list extended tunnel
ip access-list extended tunnel
permit gre host 192.168.5.113 host 172.20.120.141
exit
interface Tunnel1
ip address 10.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
source Tunnel2
ip address 20.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
tunnel source 192.168.5.113
tunnel destination 172.20.120.141
!
ip route 10.11.101.0 255.255.255.0 Tunnel1
end
clea crypto sa
clea crypto isakmp
```

For transport mode, change `no mode` to `mode transport`.

This is only the portion of the Cisco router configuration that applies to the GRE-over-IPsec tunnel. For more information, refer to the Cisco documentation.

Troubleshooting

This section describes some checks and tools you can use to resolve issues with the GRE-over-IPsec VPN.
Quick checks

Here is a list of common problems and what to verify.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>What to check</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No communication with remote network.</td>
<td>Use the <code>execute ping</code> command to ping the Cisco device public interface. Use the FortiGate VPN Monitor page to see whether the IPsec tunnel is up or can be brought up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPsec tunnel does not come up.</td>
<td>Check the logs to determine whether the failure is in Phase 1 or Phase 2. Check that the encryption and authentication settings match those on the Cisco device. Check the encapsulation setting: tunnel-mode or transport-mode. Both devices must use the same mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel connects, but there is no communication.</td>
<td>Check the security policies. See “Configuring security policies” on page 214. Check routing. See “Configuring routing” on page 217.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Setting up logging

To configure FortiGate logging for IPsec

2. Select the Event Logging.
3. Select IPsec negotiation event.
4. Select Apply.

To configure FortiGate logging level

2. Select Local Logging & Archiving.
3. Set Minimum log level to Information.
4. Optionally, enable and configure disk logging.
5. Select Apply.

To view FortiGate logs

2. Select the log storage type.
3. Select Refresh to view any logged events.

Understanding the log messages

Successful startup of an IPsec VPN follows a well-defined sequence. If you compare your logs to the sequence shown in Table 7, you will be able to determine at what stage your configuration is failing.
Using diagnostic commands

There are some diagnostic commands that can provide useful information.

To use the packet sniffer:

1. Enter the following CLI command:
   ```
   diag sniff packet any icmp 4
   ```

2. Ping an address on the network behind the FortiGate unit from the network behind the Cisco router.

   The output will show packets coming in from the GRE interface going out of the interface that connects to the protected network (LAN) and vice versa. For example:

   ```
   114.124303 gre1 in 10.0.1.2 -> 10.11.101.10: icmp: echo request
   114.124367 port2 out 10.0.1.2 -> 10.11.101.10: icmp: echo request
   114.124466 port2 in 10.11.101.10 -> 10.0.1.2: icmp: echo reply
   114.124476 gre1 out 10.11.101.10 -> 10.0.1.2: icmp: echo reply
   ```

3. Enter CTRL-C to stop the sniffer.

To view debug output for IKE:

1. Enter the following CLI commands:
   ```
   diagnose debug application ike -1
   diagnose debug enable
   ```

2. Attempt to use the VPN or set up the VPN tunnel and note the debug output.

3. Enter CTRL-C to stop the debug output.

4. Enter the following command to reset debug settings to default:
   ```
   diagnose debug reset
   ```

Table 7: Typical sequence of log messages for IPsec VPN connection startup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Sub Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>37127</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>37129</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>negotiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>37133</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>install_sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>37139</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>phase2-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>37138</td>
<td>ipsec</td>
<td>tunnel-up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Protecting OSPF with IPsec

For enhanced security, OSPF dynamic routing can be carried over IPsec VPN links.
The following topics are included in this section:

- **Overview**
- **OSPF over IPsec configuration**
- **Creating a redundant configuration**

**Overview**

This chapter shows an example of OSPF routing conducted over an IPsec tunnel between two FortiGate units. The network shown in Figure 35 is a single OSPF area. FortiGate_1 is an Area border router that advertises a static route to 10.22.10.0/24 in OSPF. FortiGate_2 advertises its local LAN as an OSPF internal route.

**Figure 35: OSPF over an IPsec VPN tunnel**

The section “OSPF over IPsec configuration” describes the configuration with only one IPsec VPN tunnel, tunnel_wan1. Then, the section “Creating a redundant configuration” on page 227 describes how you can add a second tunnel to provide a redundant backup path. This is shown in Figure 35 as VPN tunnel “tunnel_wan2”.

Only the parts of the configuration concerned with creating the IPsec tunnel and integrating it into the OSPF network are described. It is assumed that security policies are already in place to allow traffic to flow between the interfaces on each FortiGate unit.
**OSPF over IPsec configuration**

There are several steps to the OSPF-over-IPsec configuration:

- Configure a route-based IPsec VPN on an external interface. It will connect to a corresponding interface on the other FortiGate unit. Define the two tunnel-end addresses.
- Configure a static route to the other FortiGate unit.
- Configure the tunnel network as part of the OSPF network and define the virtual IPsec interface as an OSPF interface.

This section describes the configuration with only one VPN, tunnel_wan1. The other VPN is added in the section “Creating a redundant configuration” on page 227.

**Configuring the IPsec VPN**

A route-based VPN is required. In this chapter, preshared key authentication is shown. Certificate authentication is also possible. Both FortiGate units need this configuration.

**To configure Phase 1**

1. Define the phase 1 configuration needed to establish a secure connection with the other FortiGate unit. For more information, see “Auto Key phase 1 parameters” on page 39. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify the VPN tunnel, tunnel_wan1 for example. This becomes the name of the virtual IPsec interface.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Gateway</td>
<td>Select Static IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the other FortiGate unit’s public (Port 2) interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Interface</td>
<td>Select this FortiGate unit’s public (Port 2) interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Select Main (ID Protection).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Method</td>
<td>Preshared Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-shared Key</td>
<td>Enter the preshared key. It must match the preshared key on the other FortiGate unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>Select Advanced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IPsec Interface Mode</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To assign the tunnel end IP addresses**

1. Go to System > Network > Interface, select the virtual IPsec interface that you just created on Port 2 and select Edit.
2. In the IP and Remote IP fields, enter the following tunnel end addresses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>FortiGate_1</th>
<th>FortiGate_2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
<td>10.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote_IP</td>
<td>10.1.1.2</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These addresses are from a network that is not used for anything else.
To configure Phase 2

1. Define the phase 2 parameters needed to create a VPN tunnel with the remote peer. For more information, see "Phase 2 parameters" on page 57. Enter these settings in particular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name to identify this phase 2 configuration, twan1_p2, for example.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1</td>
<td>Select the name of the phase 1 configuration that you defined in Step 1, tunnel_wan1 for example.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring static routing

You need to define the route for traffic leaving the external interface. Go to Router > Static > Static Route, select Create New, and enter the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination IP/Mask</th>
<th>Leave as 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>Select the external interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>Enter the IP address of the next hop router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Leave setting at default value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring OSPF

This section does not attempt to explain OSPF router configuration. It focusses on the integration of the IPsec tunnel into the OSPF network. This is accomplished by assigning the tunnel as an OSPF interface, creating an OSPF route to the other FortiGate unit.

This configuration uses loopback interfaces to ease OSPF troubleshooting. The OSPF router ID is set to the loopback interface address. The loopback interface ensures the router is always up. Even though technically the router ID doesn’t have to match a valid IP address on the FortiGate unit, having an IP that matches the router ID makes troubleshooting a lot easier.

The two FortiGate units have slightly different configurations. FortiGate_1 is an AS border router that advertises its static default route. FortiGate_2 advertises its local LAN as an OSPF internal route.

Setting the router ID for each FortiGate unit to the lowest possible value is useful if you want the FortiGate units to be the designated router (DR) for their respective ASes. This is the router that broadcasts the updates for the AS.

Leaving the IP address on the OSPF interface at 0.0.0.0 indicates that all potential routes will be advertised, and it will not be limited to any specific subnet. For example if this IP address was 10.1.0.0, then only routes that match that subnet will be advertised through this interface in OSPF.

FortiGate_1 OSPF configuration

When configuring FortiGate_1 for OSPF, the loopback interface is created, and then you configure OSPF area networks and interfaces.

With the exception of creating the loopback interface, OSPF for this example can all be configured in either the web-based manager or CLI.
To create the loopback interface
A loopback interface can be configured in the CLI only. For example, if the interface will have an IP address of 10.0.0.1, you would enter:

```
config system interface
edit lback1
   set vdom root
   set ip 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.255
   set type loopback
end
```

The loopback addresses and corresponding router IDs on the two FortiGate units must be different. For example, set the FortiGate 1 loopback to 10.0.0.1 and the FortiGate 2 loopback to 10.0.0.2.

To configure OSPF area, networks, and interfaces - web-based manager
1. On FortiGate_1, go to Router > Dynamic > OSPF and enter the following information to define the router, area, and interface information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Router ID</th>
<th>Enter 10.0.0.1. Select Apply before entering the remaining information.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redistribute</td>
<td>Select the Connected and Static check boxes. Use their default metric values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>areas</td>
<td>Select Create New, enter the Area and Type and then select OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>area</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Regular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interfaces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the OSPF interface, ospf_wan1 for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface, tunnel_wan1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. For Networks, select Create New.
3. Enter the following information:

| IP/Netmask | 10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0. |
| area | 0.0.0.0 |

4. For Networks, select Create New.
5. Enter the following information:

| IP/Netmask | 10.0.0.1/255.255.255.255 |
| area | 0.0.0.0 |

6. Select Apply.
To configure OSPF area and interfaces - CLI

Your loopback interface is 10.0.0.1, your tunnel ends are on the 10.1.1.0/24 network, and your virtual IPsec interface is named tunnel_wan1. Enter the following CLI commands:

```
config router ospf
   set router-id 10.0.0.1
config area
   edit 0.0.0.0
   end
config network
   edit 4
   set prefix 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
   next
   edit 2
   set prefix 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.255
   end
config ospf-interface
   edit ospf_wan1
   set cost 10
   set interface tunnel_wan1
   set network-type point-to-point
   end
config redistribute connected
   set status enable
   end
config redistribute static
   set status enable
   end
end
```

FortiGate_2 OSPF configuration

When configuring FortiGate_2 for OSPF, the loopback interface is created, and then you configure OSPF area networks and interfaces.

Configuring FortiGate_2 differs from FortiGate_1 in that three interfaces are defined instead of two. The third interface is the local LAN that will be advertised into OSPF.

With the exception of creating the loopback interface, OSPF for this example can all be configured in either the web-based manager or CLI.

To create the loopback interface

A loopback interface can be configured in the CLI only. For example, if the interface will have an IP address of 10.0.0.2, you would enter:

```
config system interface
   edit lback1
   set vdom root
   set ip 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255
   set type loopback
   end
```

The loopback addresses on the two FortiGate units must be different. For example, set the FortiGate 1 loopback to 10.0.0.1 and the FortiGate 2 loopback to 10.0.0.2.
To configure OSPF area and interfaces - web-based manager

1. On FortiGate_2, go to Router > Dynamic > OSPF.
2. For Router ID, enter 10.0.0.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Router ID</th>
<th>10.0.0.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Areas</th>
<th>Select Create New, enter the Area and Type and then select OK.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Regular</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interfaces</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Enter a name for the OSPF interface, ospf_wan1 for example.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td></td>
<td>Select the virtual IPsec interface, tunnel_wan1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. For Networks, select Create New.
4. Enter the following information for the loopback interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP/Netmask</th>
<th>10.0.0.2/255.255.255.255</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. For Networks, select Create New.
6. Enter the following information for the tunnel interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP/Netmask</th>
<th>10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. For Networks, select Create New.
8. Enter the following information for the local LAN interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP/Netmask</th>
<th>10.31.101.0/255.255.255.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Select Apply.

To configure OSPF area and interfaces - CLI

If for example, your loopback interface is 10.0.0.2, your tunnel ends are on the 10.1.1.0/24 network, your local LAN is 10.31.101.0/24, and your virtual IPsec interface is named tunnel_wan1, you would enter:

```
config router ospf
set router-id 10.0.0.2
config area
  edit 0.0.0.0
end
config network
  edit 1
    set prefix 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
next
  edit 2
    set prefix 10.31.101.0 255.255.255.0
```
Creating a redundant configuration

You can improve the reliability of the OSPF over IPsec configuration described in the previous section by adding a second IPsec tunnel to use if the default one goes down. Redundancy in this case is not controlled by the IPsec VPN configuration but by the OSPF routing protocol.

To do this you:

- Create a second route-based IPsec tunnel on a different interface and define tunnel end addresses for it.
- Add the tunnel network as part of the OSPF network and define the virtual IPsec interface as an additional OSPF interface.
- Set the OSPF cost for the added OSPF interface to be significantly higher than the cost of the default route.

Adding the second IPsec tunnel

The configuration is the same as in “Configuring the IPsec VPN” on page 222, but the interface and addresses will be different. Ideally, the network interface you use is connected to a different Internet service provider for added redundancy.

When adding the second tunnel to the OSPF network, choose another unused subnet for the tunnel ends, 10.1.2.1 and 10.1.2.2 for example.

Adding the OSPF interface

OSPF uses the metric called cost when determining the best route, with lower costs being preferred. Up to now in this example, only the default cost of 10 has been used. Cost can be set only in the CLI.

The new IPsec tunnel will have its OSPF cost set higher than that of the default tunnel to ensure that it is only used if the first tunnel goes down. The new tunnel could be set to a cost of 200 compared to the default cost is 10. Such a large difference in cost will ensure this new tunnel will only be used as a last resort.

If the new tunnel is called tunnel_wan2, you would enter the following on both FortiGate units:

```plaintext
config router ospf
config ospf-interface
edit ospf_wan2
set cost 200
set interface tunnel_wan2
set network-type point-to-point
end
end
```
Hardware offloading and acceleration

FortiGate units incorporate proprietary FortiASIC NP2 network processors that can provide accelerated processing for IPsec VPN traffic. This section describes how to configure offloading and acceleration.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Overview
- IPsec offloading configuration examples

Overview

Fortinet’s NP2 network processors contain features to improve IPsec tunnel performance. For example, network processors can encrypt and decrypt packets, offloading cryptographic work from the FortiGate unit’s main processing resources.

On FortiGate units with the appropriate hardware, you can configure offloading of both IPsec sessions and HMAC checking.

IPsec session offloading requirements

Sessions must be fast path ready. Fast path ready session requirements are:

- Layer 2 type/length must be 0x0800 (IEEE 802.1q VLAN specification is supported); link aggregation between any network interfaces sharing the same network processor(s) may be used (IEEE 802.3ad specification is supported)
- Layer 3 protocol must be IPv4
- Layer 4 protocol must be UDP, TCP or ICMP
- Layer 3 / Layer 4 header or content modification must not require a session helper (for example, SNAT, DNAT, and TTL reduction are supported, but application layer content modification is not supported)
- FortiGate unit security policy must not require antivirus or IPS inspection, although hardware accelerated anomaly checks are acceptable.
- The session must not use an aggregated link or require QoS, including rate limits and bandwidth guarantees (NP1 processor only).
- Ingress and egress network interfaces are both attached to the same network processor(s)
- In Phase I configuration, Local Gateway IP must be specified as an IP address of a network interface attached to a network processor
In Phase II configuration:

- encryption algorithm must be DES, 3DES, AES-128, AES-192, AES-256, or null (for NP1 processor, only 3DES is supported)
- authentication must be MD5, SHA1, or null (for NP1 processor, only MD5 is supported)
- if replay detection is enabled, encryption and decryption options must be enabled in the CLI (see “IPsec encryption offloading”, below)

If the IPsec session meets the above requirements, the FortiGate unit sends the IPsec security association (SA) and configured processing actions to the network processors.

Packet offloading requirements

In addition to the session requirements, the packets themselves must meet fast-path requirements:

- Incoming packets must not be fragmented.
- Outgoing packets must be 385 bytes or larger after any fragmentation. This means the configured MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) for the network processors’ interfaces must have an MTU of 385 bytes or larger.

If packet offloading requirements are not met, an individual packet will use the FortiGate unit main processing resources, regardless of whether other packets in the session are offloaded to the specialized network processors.

IPsec encryption offloading

Network processing unit (NPU) settings configure offloading behavior for IPsec VPNs. Configured behavior applies to all network processors contained by the FortiGate unit itself or any installed AMC modules.

If replay detection is not enabled (IPsec Phase 2 settings), encryption is always offloaded.

To enable offloading of encryption even when replay detection is enabled

```
config system npu
  set enc-offload-antireplay enable
end
```

To enable offloading of decryption even when replay detection is enabled

```
config system npu
  set dec-offload-antireplay enable
end
```

HMAC check offloading

The Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) check can also be offloaded to hardware. SHA-256, SHA-384, or SHA-512 cannot be off-loaded to hardware, and must be processed using only software resources.

To enable HMAC check offloading

```
configure system global
  set ipsec-hmac-offload {enable|disable}
end
```
IPsec offloading configuration examples

The following examples configure two FortiASIC NP2 accelerated VPNs, one route-based, the other policy based. In both cases, the network topology is as shown in Figure 36.

Figure 36: Hardware accelerated IPsec VPN topology

Accelerated route-based VPN configuration

This example uses the accelerated ports on FortiGate-ASM-FB4 modules in each FortiGate unit. These accelerated ports on the modules are paired interfaces that have their own network processor (NPU) to offload work from the FortiGate unit CPU. Beyond this fact, the example is normal VPN example.

Configuring the FortiGate units require the same basic steps:

- Configure VPN Phase 1
- Configure VPN Phase 2
- Create security policies to allow traffic to flow
- Create a static route to allow traffic to flow

When both FortiGates are have the VPN tunnel configured, test to ensure it is working properly.

To configure FortiGate_1

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1.
2. Configure Phase 1 settings (name FGT_1_IPsec), plus
   - Select Advanced.
   - Select Enable IPsec Interface Mode.
   - In Local Gateway IP, select Specify and enter the VPN IP address 3.3.3.1, which is the IP address of FortiGate_1’s FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module on port 2.
3. Select OK.
4. Select Create Phase 2 and configure Phase 2 settings, including
   - Select Enable replay detection.
   - set enc-offload-antireplay to enable using the config system npu CLI command.
5 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

6 Configure two policies (one for each direction) to apply the Phase 1 IPsec configuration you configured in step 2 to traffic leaving from or arriving on FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module port 1.

7 Go to Router > Static > Static Route.

8 Configure a static route to route traffic destined for FortiGate_2’s protected network to the virtual IPsec interface, FGT_1_IPsec.

To add the static route from the CLI:

```
config router static
  edit 2
    set device "FGT_1_IPsec"
    set dst 2.2.2.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

To configure FortiGate_2

1 Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1.

2 Configure Phase 1 settings (name FGT_2_IPsec), plus
   - Select Advanced.
   - Select Enable IPsec Interface Mode.
   - In Local Gateway IP, select Specify and enter the VPN IP address 3.3.3.2, which is the IP address of FortiGate_2’s FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module on port 2.

3 Select OK.

4 Select Create Phase 2 and configure Phase 2 settings, including
   - Select Enable replay detection.
   - set enc-offload-antireplay to enable using the `config system npu` CLI command.

5 Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.

6 Configure two policies (one for each direction) to apply the Phase 1 IPsec configuration you configured in step 2 to traffic leaving from or arriving on FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module port 1.

7 Go to Router > Static > Static Route.

8 Configure a static route to route traffic destined for FortiGate_1’s protected network to the virtual IPsec interface, FGT_2_IPsec.

To add the static route from the CLI:

```
config router static
  edit 2
    set device "FGT_2_IPsec"
    set dst 1.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

To test the VPN

1 Activate the IPsec tunnel by sending traffic between the two protected networks.

2 To verify tunnel activation, go to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor.
Accelerated policy-based VPN configuration

To configure FortiGate_1

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1.
2. Configure Phase 1 settings (name FGT_1_IPsec), plus
   - Select Advanced.
   - Ensure that the Enable IPsec Interface Mode check box is not selected.
   - In Local Gateway IP, select Specify and enter the VPN IP address 3.3.3.1, which is the IP address of FortiGate_1’s FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module on port 2.
3. Select OK.
4. Select Create Phase 2 and configure Phase 2 settings, including
   - Select Enable replay detection.
   - Set enc-offload-antireplay to enable using the `config system npu` CLI command.
5. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
6. Configure an IPSEC policy to apply the Phase 1 IPsec tunnel you configured in step 2 to traffic between FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module ports 1 and 2.
7. Go to Router > Static > Static Route.
8. Configure a static route to route traffic destined for FortiGate_2’s protected network to FortiGate_2’s VPN gateway, 3.3.3.2, through the FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module’s port 2 (device).
   To add the static route from the CLI:
   ```
   config router static
   edit 0
       set device "AMC-SW1/2"
       set dst 2.2.2.0 255.255.255.0
       set gateway 3.3.3.1
   end
   ```

To configure FortiGate_2

1. Go to VPN > IPsec > Auto Key (IKE) and select Create Phase 1.
2. Configure Phase 1 settings (name FGT_2_IPsec), plus
   - Select Advanced.
   - Select Enable IPsec Interface Mode.
   - In Local Gateway IP, select Specify and enter the VPN IP address 3.3.3.2, which is the IP address of FortiGate_2’s FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module on port 2.
3. Select OK.
4. Select Create Phase 2 and configure Phase 2 settings, including
   - Select Enable replay detection.
   - Set enc-offload-antireplay to enable using the `config system npu` CLI command.
5. Go to Policy > Policy > Policy.
6. Configure an IPSEC policy to apply the Phase 1 IPsec tunnel you configured in step 2 to traffic between FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module ports 1 and 2.
7. Go to Router > Static > Static Route.
8 Configure a static route to route traffic destined for FortiGate_1’s protected network to FortiGate_2’s VPN gateway, 3.3.3.2, through the FortiGate-ASM-FB4 module’s port 2 (device).

To add the static route from the CLI:

```
config router static
  edit 0
    set device "AMC-SW1/2"
    set dst 1.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
    set gateway 3.3.3.2
  end
```

To test the VPN

1 Activate the IPsec tunnel by sending traffic between the two protected networks.
2 To verify tunnel activation, go to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor.
Monitoring and troubleshooting

This section provides some general maintenance and monitoring procedures for VPNs. The following topics are included in this section:

- Monitoring VPN connections
- Testing VPN connections
- Testing VPN connections
- Logging VPN events
- VPN troubleshooting tips

Monitoring VPN connections

You can use the monitor to view activity on IPsec VPN tunnels and to start or stop those tunnels. The display provides a list of addresses, proxy IDs, and timeout information for all active tunnels. See “IPsec Monitor” on page 37.

Monitoring connections to remote peers

The list of tunnels provides information about VPN connections to remote peers that have static IP addresses or domain names. You can use this list to view status and IP addressing information for each tunnel configuration. You can also start and stop individual tunnels from the list.

To view the list of static-IP and dynamic-DNS tunnels go to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor.

Monitoring dialup IPsec connections

The list of dialup tunnels provides information about the status of tunnels that have been established for dialup clients. The list displays the IP addresses of dialup clients and the names of all active tunnels. The number of tunnels shown in the list can change as dialup clients connect and disconnect.

To view the list of dialup tunnels go to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor.

If you take down an active tunnel while a dialup client such as FortiClient is still connected, FortiClient will continue to show the tunnel connected and idle. The dialup client must disconnect before another tunnel can be initiated.

The list of dialup tunnels displays the following statistics:

- The Name column displays the name of the tunnel.
- The meaning of the value in the Remote gateway column changes, depending on the configuration of the network at the far end:
Testing VPN connections

A VPN connection has multiple stages that can be confirmed to ensure the connection is working properly. It is easiest to see if the final stage is successful first since if it is successful the other stages will be working properly. Otherwise, you will need to work back through the stages to see where the problem is located.

- Testing VPN connection
- Troubleshooting VPN connections

Testing VPN connection

When a VPN connection is properly established, traffic will flow from one end to the other as if both ends were physically in the same place. If you can determine the connection is working properly then any problems are likely problems with your applications.

If the connection is not working properly, you can move on to “Troubleshooting VPN connections” on page 237 to determine the exact problem.
LAN interface connection

To confirm whether a VPN connection over LAN interfaces has been configured correctly, issue a ping or traceroute command on the network behind the FortiGate unit to test the connection to a computer on the remote network. If the connection is properly configured, a VPN tunnel will be established automatically when the first data packet destined for the remote network is intercepted by the FortiGate unit.

If the ping or traceroute fail, it indicates a connection problem between the two ends of the tunnel. This may or may not indicate problems with the VPN tunnel. You can confirm this by going to VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor where you will be able to see your connection. A green arrow means the tunnel is up and currently processing traffic. A red arrow means the tunnel is not processing traffic, and this VPN connection has a problem.

If the connection has problems, see “Troubleshooting VPN connections” on page 237.

Dialup connection

A dialup VPN connection has additional steps. To confirm that a VPN between a local network and a dialup client has been configured correctly, at the dialup client, issue a ping command to test the connection to the local network. The VPN tunnel initializes when the dialup client attempts to connect.

If the ping or traceroute fail, it indicates a connection problem between the two ends of the tunnel. This may or may not indicate problems with the VPN tunnel, or dialup client. As with the LAN connection, confirm the VPN tunnel is established by checking VPN > Monitor > IPsec Monitor.

If the connection has problems, see Troubleshooting.

Troubleshooting VPN connections

If you have determined that your VPN connection is not working properly through “Testing VPN connection” on page 236, the next step is to verify that you have a phase2 connection.

If traffic is not passing through the FortiGate unit as you expect, ensure the traffic does not contain IPcomp packets (IP protocol 108, RFC 3173). FortiGate units do not allow IPcomp packets, they compress packet payload, preventing it from being scanned.

Testing phase 1 and 2 connections is a bit more difficult than testing the working VPN. This is because they require diagnose CLI commands. These commands are typically used by Fortinet customer support to discover more information about your FortiGate unit and its current configuration.

Before you start troubleshooting you need to:

- configure FortiGate units on both ends for interface VPN
- record the information in your VPN phase 1 and phase 2 configurations - for our example here the remote IP address is 10.101.101.101 and the names of the phases are Phase1 and Phase2
- install a telnet or SSH client such as putty that allows logging of output
- ensure that the admin interface supports your chosen connection protocol so you can connect to your FortiGate unit admin interface.
- For this example, default values were used unless stated otherwise.
To get diagnose information for the VPN connection - CLI

1. Log into the CLI as admin with the output being logged to a file.
2. Stop any diag debug sessions that are currently running with the CLI command
   ```
   diag debug disable
   ```
3. Clear any existing log-filters by running
   ```
   diag debug log-filter clear
   ```
4. Set the log-filter to the IP address of the remote computer (10.11.101.10). This filters out all VPN connections except ones to the IP address we are concerned with. The command is
   ```
   diag debug log-filter dst-addr4 10.11.101.10.
   ```
5. Set up the commands to output the VPN handshaking. The commands are:
   ```
   diag debug app ike 255
   diag debug enable
   ```
6. Have the remote FortiGate initiate the VPN connection in the web-based manager by going to VPN > Monitor and selecting Bring up.
   This makes the remote FortiGate the initiator and the local FortiGate becomes the responder. Establishing the connection in this manner means the local FortiGate will have its configuration information as well as the information the remote computer sends. Having both sets of information locally makes it easier to troubleshoot your VPN connection.
7. Watch the screen for output, and after roughly 15 seconds enter the following CLI command to stop the output.
   ```
   diag debug disable
   ```
8. If needed, save the log file of this output to a file on your local computer.
   Saving the output to a file can make it easier to search for a particular phrase, or save the output for future comparison with different output.

To troubleshoot a phase1 VPN connection

Using the output from “To get diagnose information for the VPN connection - CLI” on page 238, search for the word proposal in the output. It may occur once indicating a successful connection, or it will occur two or more times for an unsuccessful connection — there will be one proposal listed for each end of the tunnel and each possible combination in their settings. For example if 10.11.101.10 selected both DH Group 1 and 5, that would be at least 2 proposals set.

A successful negotiation proposal will look similar to
- XXX insert output sample here XXX

Note the phrases “initiator: main mode is sending 1st message...” and “” which show you the handshake between the ends of the tunnel is in progress. Initiator shows the remote unit is sending the first message.

In the proposal you will see the Diffie-Hellman Group (DH Group) listed as OAKLEY and vn=<a number>. This is normal.
Logging VPN events

You can configure the FortiGate unit to log VPN events. For IPsec VPNs, phase 1 and phase 2 authentication and encryption events are logged. For information about how to interpret log messages, see the FortiGate Log Message Reference.

To log VPN events

2. Enable the storage of log messages to one or more of the following locations:
   - a FortiLog unit
   - the FortiGate system memory
   - a remote computer running a syslog server
3. If the options are concealed, select the blue arrow beside each option to reveal and configure associated settings.
4. If logs will be written to system memory, from the Log Level list, select Information. For more information, see the Logging and Reporting Guide.
5. Select Apply.

To filter VPN events

2. Verify that the IPsec negotiation event option is selected.
3. Select Apply.

To view event logs

2. If the option is available from the Type list, select the log file from disk or memory.

Entries similar to the following indicate that a tunnel has been established. The following log messages concern a VPN tunnel called vpn_test on port2 interface in the root VDOM. Pay attention to the status and msg values.

2005-03-31 15:38:29 log_id=0101023004 type=event subtype=ipsec
pri=notice vd=root loc_ip=172.16.62.10 loc_port=500
rem_ip=172.16.62.11 rem_port=500 out_if=port2 vpn_tunnel=vpn_test
cookies=151c3a5c6dd93c54/0000000000000000 action=negotiate
init=local mode=main stage=1 dir=outbound status=success
msg="Initiator: sent 172.16.62.11 main mode message #1 (OK)"
2005-03-31 15:38:29 log_id=0101023004 type=event subtype=ipsec
pri=notice vd=root loc_ip=172.16.62.10 loc_port=500
rem_ip=172.16.62.11 rem_port=500 out_if=port2 vpn_tunnel=vpn_test
cookies=151c3a5c6dd93c54/5ed26a81fb7a2d0c action=negotiate
init=local mode=main stage=2 dir=outbound status=success
msg="Initiator: sent 172.16.62.11 main mode message #2 (OK)"
Entries similar to the following indicate that phase 1 negotiations broke down because the preshared keys belonging to the VPN peers were not identical. A tunnel was not established. Pay attention to the status and msg values.

Entries similar to the following indicate that phase 1 negotiations broke down because the preshared keys belonging to the VPN peers were not identical. A tunnel was not established. Pay attention to the status and msg values.

For more information about how to interpret error log messages, see the FortiGate Log Message Reference.
VPN troubleshooting tips

More in-depth VPN troubleshooting can be found in the Troubleshooting guide.

The VPN proposal is not connecting

One side may attempt to initiate the VPN tunnel unsuccessful. There are a number of potential reasons for this problem.

Attempting hardware offloading beyond SHA1

If you are trying to off-load VPN processing to a network processing unit (NPU), remember that only SHA1 authentication is supported. For high levels of authentication such as SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512 hardware offloading is not an option — all VPN processing must be done in software.

Check Phase 1 proposal settings

Ensure that both sides have at least one Phase 1 proposal in common. Otherwise they will not connect. If there are many proposals in the list, this will slow down the negotiating of Phase 1. If its too slow, the connection may timeout before completing. If this happens, try removing some of the unused proposals.

Ensure you are not using a loopback for the local VPN interface

The Local Interface field in Phase 1 VPN configuration cannot not be configured to point to a loopback interface, or the IPSec tunnel will not be established.

Check your routing

If routing is not properly configured with an entry for the remote end of the VPN tunnel, traffic will not flow properly. You may need static routes on both ends of the tunnel. If routing is the problem, the proposal will likely setup properly but no traffic will flow.

Try enabling XAuth

If one end of an attempted VPN tunnel is using XAuth and the other end is not, the connection attempt will fail. The log messages for the attempted connection will not mention XAuth is the reason, but when connections are failing it is a good idea to ensure both ends have the same XAuth settings. If you do not know the other end’s settings enable or disable XAuth on your end to see if that is the problem.

General troubleshooting tips

Most connection failures are due to a configuration mismatch between the FortiGate unit and the remote peer. In general, begin troubleshooting an IPsec VPN connection failure as follows:

1. Ping the remote network or client to verify whether the connection is up. See “Testing VPN connections” on page 236.
2. Traceroute the remote network or client. If DNS is working, you can use domain names. Otherwise use IP addresses.
3. Check the routing behind the dialup client. Routing problems may be affecting DHCP. If this appears to be the case, configure a DHCP relay service to enable DHCP requests to be relayed to a DHCP server on or behind the FortiGate server.
4. Verify the configuration of the FortiGate unit and the remote peer. Check the following IPsec parameters:
• The mode setting for ID protection (main or aggressive) on both VPN peers must be identical.
• The authentication method (preshared keys or certificates) used by the client must be supported on the FortiGate unit and configured properly.
• If preshared keys are being used for authentication purposes, both VPN peers must have identical preshared keys.
• The remote client must have at least one set of phase 1 encryption, authentication, and Diffie-Hellman settings that match corresponding settings on the FortiGate unit.
• Both VPN peers must have the same NAT traversal setting (enabled or disabled).
• The remote client must have at least one set of phase 2 encryption and authentication algorithm settings that match the corresponding settings on the FortiGate unit.
• If you are using manual keys to establish a tunnel, the Remote SPI setting on the FortiGate unit must be identical to the Local SPI setting on the remote peer, and vice versa.

5 To correct the problem, see the following table.

Table 8: VPN trouble-shooting tips

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration problem</th>
<th>Correction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode settings do not match.</td>
<td>Select complementary mode settings. See “Choosing main mode or aggressive mode” on page 40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer ID or certificate name of the remote peer or dialup client is not recognized by FortiGate VPN server.</td>
<td>Check Phase 1 configuration. Depending on the Remote Gateway and Authentication Method settings, you have a choice of options to authenticate FortiGate dialup clients or VPN peers by ID or certificate name (see “Authenticating remote peers and clients” on page 44). If you are configuring authentication parameters for FortiClient dialup clients, refer to the Authenticating FortiClient Dialup Clients Technical Note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preshared keys do not match.</td>
<td>Reenter the preshared key. See “Authenticating remote peers and clients” on page 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1 or phase 2 key exchange proposals are mismatched.</td>
<td>Make sure that both VPN peers have at least one set of proposals in common for each phase. See “Defining IKE negotiation parameters” on page 49 and “Configure the phase 2 parameters” on page 60.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT traversal settings are mismatched.</td>
<td>Select or clear both options as required. See “NAT traversal” on page 52 and “NAT keepalive frequency” on page 53.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI settings for manual key tunnels are mismatched.</td>
<td>Enter complementary SPI settings. See “Manual-key configurations” on page 183.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A word about NAT devices

When a device with NAT capabilities is located between two VPN peers or a VPN peer and a dialup client, that device must be NAT traversal (NAT-T) compatible for encrypted traffic to pass through the NAT device. For more information, see “NAT traversal” on page 52.
Index

Numerics
3DES-Triple-DES, 51

A
Accept peer certificate, 46
Accept this peer certificate
  group only, 46
adding, configuring defining
  IPSec VPN phase 1, 26
  IPSec VPN phase 1 advanced options, 28
  IPSec VPN phase 2, 31
  IPSec VPN phase 2 advanced options, 31
AES128,192,256, 51
aggregated subnets
  for hub-and-spoke VPN, 86
aggressive mode, 39
Allow inbound, encryption policy, 65
Allow outbound, encryption policy, 65
ambiguous routing
  resolving in FortiGate dialup-client configuration, 134
  VPN routing, 76
antireplay, 230
authenticating
  based on peer IDs, 46
  FortiGate unit pre-shared key, 43
  IPSec VPN peers and clients, 44
  through IPSec certificate, 41
  through XAuth settings, 54
authentication
  SHA-1, 256, 384, 512, 51
Authentication Algorithm
  Manual Key, 184
Authentication Key, Manual Key, 185
authentication server, XAuth, 54
Autokey
  IPSec VPN, 25
  keep alive, 59
  Keep Alive, IPSec interface mode, 61

B
backup VPN, 173

C
Certificate Name, Phase 1, 42
certificate, IPSec
  group, 45
  Local ID setting, 46
  using DN to establish access, 44
  viewing local DN, 45
Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), 55
Cisco VPN, 211
client IP
  assigning with RADIUS, 119
concentrator, 90
IPSec tunnel mode, 36
IPSec VPN, policy-based, 36
configuring
dynamic DNS VPN, 104
FortiClient dialup-client VPN, 120
FortiClient in dialup-client VPN, 125
FortiGate dialup-client VPN, 136
FortiGate in dialup-client IPSec VPN, 138
gateway-to-gateway IPSec VPN, 71
hub-and-spoke IPSec VPN, 85
manual keys, 184
transparent mode IPSec VPN, 179
cryptographic load, 229

dead gateway detection, 83
Dead Peer Detection (DPD), 53, 83
  Phase 1, 52, 53
designated router (DR), OSPF, 223
DH Group
  IPSec interface mode, 61
  Phase 1, 49, 52
  Phase 2, 58
DH key size, FIPS-CC, 49
DHCP relay
  in FortiClient dialup-client configuration, 123
  in FortiGate dialup client configuration, 135
DHCP server, 59
  in FortiClient dialup-client configuration, 123
DHCP-IPsec
  IPSec interface mode, 61
  IPSec VPN, phase 2, 33
  phase 2, 59
dialup-client IPSec configuration
  DHCP server and relay, FortiClient VIP, 123
dialup server for FortiClient dialup clients, 120
dialup server for FortiGate dialup clients, 136
FortiGate client configuration, 138
FortiGate dialup client configuration, 136
requirements for FortiClient access, 119
requirements for FortiGate client access, 135
Diffie-Hellman algorithm, 49, 58
Digital Encryption Standard, 17
DNS server, dynamic DNS configuration, 104
domain name, dynamic DNS configuration, 103, 105
Dynamic DNS (DDNS), 101
  configuration steps, 104
  domain name configuration, 105
  overview, 101
  remote VPN peer configuration, 110
dynamic IP address
  for remote host, 115
  FortiGate DDNS peer, 103
  FortiGate dialup client, 133
dynamic VPN address
  mode-cfg, 144
dynamic-gateway, 101

E
Enable perfect forward secrecy (PFS)
  IPsec interface mode, 61
  Phase 2, 58
Enable replay detection
  IPsec interface mode, 61
Enable replay detection, Phase 2, 58
Encapsulation, 13
Encryption Algorithm
  IPSec VPN, manual key, 36
Encryption Algorithm, Manual Key, 184
Encryption Key, Manual Key, 184
encryption policy
  allow outbound and inbound, 65
  defining IP addresses, 63
  defining IPsec, 66
  defining multiple for same IPsec tunnel, 67
  evaluating multiple, 67
  outbound and inbound NAT, 65
  traffic direction, 65
examples
  hub-and-spoke VPN, 95
Extended Authentication (XAuth), 41, 54, 126
extended authentication (XAuth), 42

F
fast path
  required session characteristics, 229
firewall IP addresses
  defining, 63
firewall policy
  defining for policy-based VPN, 65
  defining for route-based VPN, 68
  hub to spoke, 92
  policy-based, for FortiGate dialup client, 139
  policy-based, for gateway-to-gateway, 76
  policy-based, for hub-and-spoke, 89
  route-based, for FortiGate dialup client, 139
  route-based, for gateway-to-gateway, 74
  route-based, for hub-and-spoke, 89
  spoke to spoke, 93
  using as route-based "concentrator", 91
FortiASIC, 50, 51
NP2, 229
FortiClient dialup client configuration
  example, 127

I
IKE Configuration Method, 144
IKE encryption key, 52
IKE negotiation parameters, 49
IKEv2, 41
Inbound NAT, encryption policy, 65
initiator, 82
Internet-browsing
  configuring FortiClient, 150
Internet-browsing firewall policy
  VPN server, 148
Internet-browsing IPsec configuration
  FortiClient dialup-client configuration, 149
  gateway-to-gateway configuration, 148
  infrastructure requirements, 147
  overview, 147
IP protocol 108, 237

G
gateway-to-gateway IPsec configuration
  configuration steps, 71
  overview, 69
  policy-based firewall policy, 76
  route-based firewall policy, 74
generating
  IPsec phase 1 keys, 49
  IPsec phase 2 keys, 58
GRE-over-IPsec VPN, 211

H
Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC), 49
HMAC-MD5, 49
HMAC-SHA-1, 49
hub-and-spoke
  spoke subnet addressing, 86
hub-and-spoke IPsec configuration
  concentrator, defining, 90
  configuration example, 95
  hub configuration, 87
  infrastructure requirements, 86
  overview, 85
  policy-based concentrator, 90
  policy-based firewall policy, 89
  route-based firewall policy, 89
  route-based inter-spoke communication, 90
  spoke configuration, 92
Index

IPcomp, 237
IPsec, 230
tunnel, 229
IPsec monitor, 37
IPSec VPN
  adding manual key, 35
  Autokey list, 25
  concentrator list, 36
  configuring phase 1, 26
  configuring phase 1 advanced options, 28
  configuring phase 2, 31
  configuring phase 2 advanced options, 31
  Manual Key list, 35
IPsec VPN
  authentication methods, 44
  authentication options, 44
  backup, 173
certificates, 44
DDNS routing, 101
extended authentication (XAuth), 54
firewall IP addresses, defining, 63
firewall IPsec policy, 65
keeping tunnel open, 59
logging events, 239
manual key, 24
monitoring, dialup connection, 235
monitoring, static or DDNS connection, 235
peer identification, 47
phase 1 parameters, 39
phase 2 parameters, 57
role of encryption policy, 66
route-based firewall policy, 68
testing, 236
troubleshooting, 241
IPv6 IPsec configurations
  certificates, 187
certification, 188
firewall policies, 188
IPv4-over-IPv6 example, 192
IPv6-over-IPv4 example, 195
IPv6-over-IPv6 example, 189
overview, 187
phase 1, 188
phase 2, 188
routing, 188
ISAKMP, 53
K
  keepalive, 53
  Keepalive Frequency, Phase 1, 52, 53
Keylife
  IPsec interface mode, 61
keylife, 58
Keylife, Phase 1, 49, 52
Keylife, Phase 2, 58
L
L2TP
  port 1701, 200
  L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC), 200
  L2TP-over-IPsec, 199
Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP), 199
LDAP server, external
  for XAuth, 54
life of a packet, 22
Local Gateway IP, 229
Local ID
  for certificates, 46
to identify FortiGate dialup clients, 134
Local Interface
  IPSec VPN, manual key, 36
Local SPI
  IPSec VPN, manual key, 35
Local SPI, Manual Key, 184
logging VPN events, 239
M
  main mode, 39
Manual Key
  IPSec VPN, 35
  manual key IPsec configuration
    configuration steps, 184
    overview, 183
MD5, 230
meshed VPN, 69
Microsoft Windows, 23
Microsoft Windows VPN, 199
Mode, Phase 1, 42, 43
monitoring
  IPsec sessions, 37
MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit), 230
N
  Name
  IPSec VPN, manual key, 35
  NAT
    keepalive frequency, 53
    traversal, 52, 242
  Nat-traversal, Phase 1, 52
  negotiating
    IPsec phase 1 parameters, 49
    IPsec phase 2 parameters, 58
Network Address Translation (NAT), 52
network topology
  dynamic DNS, 101
  FortiClient dialup-client, 115
  FortiGate dialup client, 133
  fully meshed network, 69
  gateway-to-gateway, 69
  hub-and-spoke, 85
  Internet-browsing, 147
  manual key, 183
  partially meshed network, 69
  redundant-tunnel, 151
  supported IPsec VPNs, 23
  transparent mode VPN, 175
NP2 network processor, 229
NP2 network processors, 229
OSPF
  protecting with IPsec, 221
  with redundant IPsec tunnels, 227
Outbound NAT, encryption policy, 65
  overlap
    resolving IP address, 134
    resolving through FortiGate DHCP relay, 134
overlapping VPN subnets, 76

P
P1 Proposal, Phase 1, 49, 51
P2 Proposal
  IPSec VPN, phase 2, 32
P2 Proposal, Phase 2, 58
  partially meshed VPN, 69
Password Authentication Protocol (PAP), 55
  peer ID
    assigning to FortiGate unit, 46
    enabling, 47
  Peer option
    IPSec VPN, phase 1, 27
  Peer Options, 41
  perfect forward secrecy (PFS), 80
  perfect forward secrecy, enabling, 58
Phase, 31
  phase 1
    IPSec VPN, 26, 31
  phase 1 advanced options
    IPSec VPN, 28
  phase 1 parameters
    authenticating with certificates, 41
    authenticating with preshared keys, 42
    authentication method, 44
    authentication options, 44
    defining, 39
    defining the tunnel ends, 40
    IKE proposals, 50
    main or aggressive mode, 40
    negotiating, 49
    overview, 39
    peer identifiers, 46
    user accounts, 47
  phase 2
    Autokey keep alive, 59
    IPSec VPN, 31
    key expires, 58
  PFS, 80
  phase 2 advanced options
    IPSec VPN, 31
  phase 2 parameters
    autokey keep alive, 59
    auto-negotiate, 58
    configuring, 60
    defining, 57
    DHCP-IPsec, 59
    keylife, 58
    negotiating, 58
    perfect forward secrecy (PFS), 58
    quick mode selectors, 59
    replay detection, 58
  Phase I, 229
  Phase II, 230
  planning VPN configuration, 22
  policy server, VPN
    configuring FortiGate unit as, 123
  policy-based VPN
    vs. route-based, 22
    port 1701, 200
    port 4500, 52
    port 500, 52
  pre-shared key
    authenticating FortiGate unit with, 43
    preshared key, 17
  Pre-shared Key, Phase 1, 43
  proposal
    IPSec VPN, phase 2, 32
Q
Quick mode selectors, Phase 2, 59
R
RADIUS, 144
  assigning client IPs with, 119
RADIUS server, external
  for XAuth, 54
redundant VPNs
  configuration, 152
  example, fully redundant configuration, 155
  example, partially-redundant configuration, 166
  overview, 151
remote client
  authenticating with certificates, 41
  FortiGate dialup-client, 133
  in Internet-browsing IPsec configuration, 147
Remote Gateway
  IPSec manual key setting, 35
remote gateway
  dialup user, 59
Remote Gateway, Phase 1, 41, 43
remote peer
  authenticating with certificates, 41
  dynamic DNS configuration, 110
  gateway-to-gateway IPsec configuration, 71
  manual key configuration, 35
  manual key IPsec configuration, 183
  transparent IPsec VPN configuration, 176
Remote SPI
  IPSec VPN, manual key, 35
Remote SPI, Manual Key, 184
replay detection, 230
replay detection, enabling, 58
RFC 317, 237
route-based VPN
  firewall policy, 68
  vs. policy-based, 22
routing, transparent VPN IPsec configuration, 178
S
Security Association (SA), 58, 183
security association (SA), 230
security layer
  stateful inspection, 22
Security Parameter Index (SPI), 183
SHA1, 230
SHA-256, 49
SHA-256, 384, 512, 51
stateful inspection, 22

T
testing VPN connections, 236
transparent mode VPN configuration
  configuration steps, 179
  infrastructure requirements, 178
  overview, 175
  prerequisites to configuration, 179
transport mode
  setting, 213
troubleshoot
  VPN, 238
troubleshooting VPNs, 241
tunnel
  bi-directional initiation, 65

V
  viewing
    IPSec VPN auto key list, 25
    IPSec VPN concentrator list, 36
    IPSec VPN manual key list, 35
VIP address, FortiClient dialup clients, 118
VIP addresses, 59
virtual domain, transparent VPN IPsec configuration, 179
virtual IP
  assigning with RADIUS, 119
virtual IP address (VIP), 76
Virtual Private Network (VPN), 13
VPN
  backup, 173
  FortiClient automatic settings, 125
  FortiClient manual settings, 125
  logging events, 239
  monitoring, dialup connection, 235
  monitoring, static or DDNS connection, 235
  planning configurations, 22
  policy-based vs. route-based, 22
  preparation steps, 24
  testing, 236
  troubleshooting, 241
vpn
  initiator, 82
VPN policy server
  configuring FortiClient to use, 125
  configuring FortiGate unit as, 123
VPNs
  Forticlient, 34

W
Windows VPN, 199

X
  XAuth (extended authentication)
    authenticating users with, 54
    FortiClient application as client, 126
    FortiGate unit as server, 54

Z
  zone
    using as route-based "concentrator", 90